



Configuration

Informatica MDM - Product 360

Version: 8.1.1

1 Table of Contents

1	Table of Contents	2
2	General Notes for Properties Files.....	12
3	Encrypt secure information	12
4	Server Configuration	12
4.1	Server Settings (server.properties)	12
4.2	Authentication Setup	19
4.2.1	General Requirements Desktop Waffle SSO	19
4.2.2	Supported Authentication Scenarios	20
4.2.3	LDAP Authentication (LDAPConfig.xml)	22
4.2.4	SAML Configuration (SamlConfig.xml)	24
4.3	Control Center Configuration (ClusterixConfig.xml).....	24
4.4	Network Configuration (NetworkConfig.xml)	25
4.4.1	Reverse Proxy Configuration.....	30
4.4.2	Setup a keystore for SSL certificates	30
4.5	Hazelcast configuration (hazelcast.xml)	31
4.6	Command Line Arguments	31
4.7	Application Preferences (plugin_customization.ini).....	32
4.7.1	Task management	32
	Task background jobs	32
	Task E-mail notification	33
	Mail server settings	33
	Notification level	33
4.7.2	Product paradigm	34
	Standard delivery	34
	Setting up 3PPD mode	34
	Setting up 1PPD mode	35
4.7.3	Characteristics	35
	MIME values	35
4.7.4	Database version check	35
4.8	Repository configuration (Repository.repository).....	35

4.8.1	Changing the default language of the repository	36
4.8.2	Adding a new language to the Repository.....	36
4.8.3	Adding a new language to the database	36
4.9	Application Modules configuration (application_modules.properties)	37
4.10	Spelling dictionaries	37
4.11	Media Asset Management Configuration	38
4.11.1	Media Manager	38
4.11.2	Classic Provider	38
	Preview Generation Parameters	38
	Running "Classic MediaAssetProvider" with unicode encoded folder names	40
4.12	Security logging	42
4.12.1	Setup a keystore for SSL certificates	42
4.13	Advanced LDAP configuration	42
4.13.1	uid example	42
4.13.2	CN example	43
4.13.3	Do not determine domain from username	44
4.14	EH-Cache Configuration	45
4.14.1	General Cache configuration.....	45
	Specific Caches	46
4.15	How to configure Oracle TCPS connection for P360 Server.....	47
4.15.1	Prerequisite	47
4.15.2	Configure P360 Server.....	47
4.16	SAML Configuration	47
4.16.1	Overview	47
	Roles	47
	Single Sign On flow	48
	Product 360 SAML support	48
4.16.2	Preparation steps.....	49
	Certificate keystores.....	49
	Enabling HTTPS	50
4.16.3	Configuring SAML for Product 360.....	51
	Adding SAML relevant configuration files (SamlConfig.xml and IdP metadata)	51
	Service Provider Metadata	53
	Identity Provider Metadata	54
	Information Security	54

Usage of SAML with Product 360 multi-server and load balancer	57
Automatic User creation on successful authentication	58
Internal Users	59
4.16.4 Logging	59
5 Desktop Client Configuration	59
5.1 OSGI Configuration Area	59
5.2 Server Connection Configuration	59
5.3 General Preferences	61
5.3.1 Load Balancing	62
Disable Load Balancing	62
Always open Server Selection Dialog	62
5.3.2 Form settings	62
Number of lines in a multiline text box	62
Number of lines in a multiline rich text box	62
5.3.3 General	62
Always run in background	62
5.3.4 Spellcheck	63
Activate spellcheck	63
Installed dictionaries	63
5.3.5 Object colors	63
Product	63
Variant	63
Item	63
5.3.6 Query	64
Do not show dialog box for editing queries	64
5.3.7 Structure editor	64
Transfer feature of the parent group when creating structure groups	64
Update subgroups when features have been changed	64
Include objects and their attribute assignments when copying structures and structure groups	64
5.3.8 Table settings	65
Max. number of rows	65
Max. number of grouping nodes per level	65
Group date/time fields by	65
Region specific sorting of texts	65
Case sensitive sorting	65
Execute "Find and Replace" on server side from	65

6	Web Configuration	66
6.1	Activate Product 360 - Web Permissions & Interface Visibility	66
6.2	Product 360 - Web Specific Configuration	67
6.3	Setup HTTPS/SSL Security	74
6.3.1	Running Product 360 - Web behind a Reverse Proxy.....	75
6.3.2	Install SSL certificates on Product 360 Application Server directly	75
6.4	Setup Load Balancing.....	76
6.4.1	Apache Web Server.....	76
6.4.2	AWS ELB.....	76
6.4.3	Troubleshooting Reverse Proxy / LB Setup and Product 360 Push issues	77
6.5	Configure Lists Views, Detail Tabs and Action Menus.....	78
6.5.1	Overview	78
6.5.2	Declarative Customization Area	79
6.5.3	Make Changes to XML Configuration Files.....	80
6.5.4	Example Definitions	82
6.5.5	List of Customization Areas.....	82
6.5.6	Q&A	96
	Debugging	96
	Referencing Fields and Logical Keys.....	96
	Display Media Asset Thumbnail in Table	96
	Display Media Asset Thumbnail in Form.....	97
6.5.7	View Definition Examples.....	97
	List with texts in multiple languages	97
	Variables support for views.....	98
	List with attribute values and custom caption.....	98
	List with different price types.....	99
	List with Structure Group Name.....	100
	List of additional price tiers.....	100
	List of DQ Status per Channel (Transition Fields)	101
	List of DQ Rule Status and Message (Transition Fields).....	102
6.5.8	Detail Tab Definition Examples	102
	Change Detail Preview Area	102
	Two column layout with language picker.....	103
	Two column layout with fixed language.....	104
	Variables support for detail tabs	105

Detail Tab with specific attributes	105
Detail Tab and editing multi-value attribute values	106
Logical Keys exploded	108
Logistic Extension Data with multiple Logical Keys	110
Fullqualified Purchase Prices	110
Editable Item Preview Panel	111
Display Structure Group Assignment	113
Editable List of Sub Entities	113
Editable List of Retail Prices for Items	114
Display Transition Fields in Detail Tab Lists, e.g. Short Description for References	115
Single Logical Key Selector for Multiple Subentities	117
List of all references to items, but not to other entities (with optional filter)	119
6.5.9 Action menu definition examples	121
Overview	121
6.6 Task UI and Dashboard configuration	124
6.6.1 Introduction	124
6.6.2 Layout	124
Grid layout	125
Grouping components	126
6.6.3 Data Sources	128
Report by alias	129
Report by ID	131
Saved searches	132
6.6.4 Components	132
6.6.5 Dashboard components	133
Message box component	133
System message component	133
iFrame component	134
Barchart component	134
Piechart component	138
Channel status component	140
My tasks component	141
Team tasks component	143
Supplier Portal Timeline component	144
Workflow KPI component	145
6.6.6 Flexible task UI components	149
Data provisioning in task UIs	149
Header strategy	151

Task UI specific syntax summary	152
Form	152
List	153
Preview	154
Structure tree.....	155
Media Document Details	155
Media documents list	156
Media categories tree	157
Dynamic Webpage	157
Characteristic values form	158
Drag & Drop	158
7 Media Manager Configuration	158
7.1 Activating PIM - Media Manager, defining volumes & setting up Funct.....	158
7.1.1 Activating Product 360 - Media Manager.....	158
7.1.2 Defining Volumes.....	159
7.1.3 Setting up Funct	160
7.2 External preview generation	160
7.2.1 External preview generation	160
Example of the file datatypes.xml	161
Example of a shell script	162
7.3 Setting up web front end	162
7.3.1 Setting up the Internet module (Internet Administration Console) (Obsolete since Product 360 8.0) ...	162
7.3.2 Setting up the Session Manager (Obsolete since Product 360 8.0).....	164
7.4 Connecting the LDAP directory service	164
7.5 Setting up Media Publisher	166
7.5.1 Presettings window	166
"Standard" tab	166
"Internal" tab	167
"Orders" tab	167
"Additional parameters" tab	167
7.6 Run Product 360 - Media Manager server modules as a Windows service.....	167
7.6.1 Run the native modules as services	167
7.6.2 Run Tomcat as a service	168
7.6.3 Run Session Manager as service.....	169
7.7 Product 360 Core and PIM - Media Manager Configuration.....	169

7.7.1	Product 360 - Server	169
	Integrating Product 360 - Media Manager	169
7.7.2	Product 360 - Desktop Client	179
7.8	Prevent deletion of assets used in Product 360	179
7.8.1	Installing the master asset support web services	179
7.8.2	Media Manager Web.....	179
7.9	Media Manager Workflows	180
7.9.1	Content	180
7.9.2	Import	180
7.9.3	Workflow: MessageQueue Asset created (AssignDocs)	180
7.9.4	Workflow: MessageQueue Asset modified.....	181
7.9.5	Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative created	182
7.9.6	Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative deleted	182
7.9.7	Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative modified.....	183
7.9.8	Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative definition created	184
7.9.9	Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative definition deleted.....	184
7.9.10	Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative definition modified	185
7.9.11	Workflow: Automatic group assignment.....	186
8	Supplier Portal Configuration.....	187
8.1	Configuration Setup and General Description.....	187
8.1.1	Property Description	187
8.2	Item Editor configuration.....	205
8.2.1	Create required Users and Groups within Product 360 - Desktop	206
	Create Product 360 Supplier Portal Administrator Users Group	206
	Create Product 360 Supplier Portal System User	207
	Add Product 360 Core Users as Product 360 Supplier Portal Administrator	207
8.2.2	Setup Product 360 - Web Users and Permissions for Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Editor/Viewer	207
	Create Product 360 - Supplier Portal Item Editor User Group	207
	Create Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Viewer User Group	210
	Create Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Editor System User.....	211
	Create Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Viewer System User	211
8.3	Setup Post Export Step.....	211
8.4	Network setup	212
8.4.1	Setup HTTPS/SSL Security	212


8.4.2	Setup a Reverse Proxy	212
8.4.3	Configure Support for X-Forward-* headers.....	213
8.4.4	Install SSL certificates on Supplier Portal Server directly	214
8.4.5	Setup Secure Connection between Supplier Portal and Product 360 Server.....	214
8.5	Multiserver Setup	215
8.5.1	Property configuration.....	215
8.5.2	Setup Reverse Proxy and Load Balancer.....	216
8.6	SAML Configuration	217
8.6.1	Overview	217
	SAML Roles	217
	Single Sign On flow	217
	System architecture.....	218
	Security in Product 360 Supplier Portal SAML support	218
8.6.2	Preparation steps.....	219
	Certificate keystores.....	219
	IdP Configuration	221
8.6.3	Configuring SAML for Product 360 Supplier Portal	222
	Activate SAML.....	222
	Configure keystore settings in configuration.properties.....	223
	Add SAML relevant configuration files.....	223
	Identity Provider metadata	227
	Information security.....	228
	Automatic user and supplier creation on successful authentication.....	230
8.6.4	Product 360 Supplier Portal Tomcat load balancing.....	233
	Supplier Portal configuration	233
	IdP configuration.....	235
	Load balancer configuration	235
8.6.5	Session lifetimes.....	238
8.7	How to configure Oracle TCPS connection for P360 Supplier Portal	238
8.7.1	Prerequisite	238
8.7.2	Configure P360 Supplier Portal.....	239
9	Audit Trail Configuration	239
9.1	Configuration Setup and General Description.....	239
9.2	Audit Trail network config	239
9.3	Property Description of Product 360 - Audit Trail in Product 360 Core	245


9.4	How to configure Oracle TCPS connection for P360 Audit Trail	246
9.4.1	Prerequisite	246
9.4.2	Configure P360 Audit Trail	247
10	Web Search Configuration	247
10.1	Index Configuration	247
10.1.1	Locale	247
10.1.2	Data Provider.....	248
10.1.3	Catalogs and Assortments.....	248
10.1.4	Entity	248
10.1.5	Field	249
10.1.6	Solr Field Attributes for WebSearch Configuration.....	252
10.1.7	Attributes	253
10.2	Advanced Index Configuration.....	253
10.2.1	Base Solr Field Types	253
10.2.2	Web Search Field Types for Web Search Configuration	254
10.2.3	Analyzer	255
10.2.4	Boost Factor	255
10.2.5	Simplify Localization Parameters	256
10.2.6	Object rights	257
10.3	REST Credential Configuration for Web Search.....	257
10.3.1	Checklist.....	258
10.4	REST Credential for Product 360 Service API.....	259
10.5	Add further languages	259
10.6	Examples	259
10.7	External links	260
10.8	Configuration Troubleshooting	260
11	BPM	261
11.1	How to configure Oracle TCPS connection for BPM.....	261
11.1.1	Prerequisite	261
11.1.2	Configure P360 BPM	261

The Configuration Manual provides the full list of all possible preference and configuration options. The installation and operation guides usually describe only the properties and preferences and settings which you are required to adjust in order for the installation. The configuration guide on the other hand describes also the optional configuration possibilities.

2 General Notes for Properties Files

Some configuration files are stored as a java properties file. Some special characters are reserved in property files, like '!' or '#' which both indicate a comment in the file. Additionally to that, the dollar sign '\$' indicates a dynamic parameter which is at runtime interpreted as the value of another key in the properties file. Those characters, together with backslashes or spaces should not be used in passwords or other parts of the configuration files. They would need to be escaped and this tends to get very dirty when someone wants to check the passwords and some characters need to be escaped and so on.

 Special characters like '!', '#', '\ or '\$' should not be used in property files - especially not as part of a password. Additionally to that we recommend to never use paths with spaces in them but that's just a general "best practice".

 In case you need to use the special character '\' for paths, like for an instance name of the database, you have to escape those with an additional backslash.

E.g. your instance name for a database is 'myDatabase\myInstance' then you have to define 'myDatabase\\myInstance' in the properties file

3 Encrypt secure information

Product 360 supports the encryption of secure information like passwords in configuration files. The encryption will be executed only if your secure information in the configuration files is enclosed by the marker `[_to_encrypt_]`.

So, if you want to have e.g. the password "MyPassword" encrypted in a configuration file just use the marker before and after the password like this: `[_to_encrypt_]MyPassword[_to_encrypt_]`.

All passwords for which encryption is supported are marked accordingly in the following chapters.

4 Server Configuration



This section describes configuration parameters which can be used to adjust the Product 360 Server to the individual needs of the customer. In contrary to the Installation Guide, it contains all available configuration parameters.



4.1 Server Settings (server.properties)



The central configuration properties file of the Product 360 Server is located in `<PIM_SERVER_INSTALLATION_ROOT>\server\configuration\HPM\server.properties` of the server installation package. The application server needs to be restarted in order to have changes take effect. The configuration file itself contains properties following the standard "key: value" pattern as is encoded as a standard java properties file.



The following tables contain a complete list of all properties available in Product 360 Server, grouped by functionality. Each property is described with further explanation and examples.




Property	Description
File Transfer Settings It is crucial for multi-server deployments that <i>all servers</i> can access the <i>same file storage</i> and the <i>same directories</i> in there. For example, it might be that Server A uploads files to the import area in the file storage, but Server B is executing the import for this. So Server B needs to have the identical file access then Server A. The currently available default implementation for the file storage is SMB which uses the SMB protocol to access the files. Please note that the file transfer from the Desktop Client is done using HTTP only. Clients do not need to have access to the file transfer shares, only the servers!	
filestorage.dir.shared	Folder which has to be accessible by each Product 360 server. In case of a single server system, the folder does not have to be a shared one
filestorage.default	Default file storage implementation. Currently only SMB is available. SMB stores the files using the SMB file protocol
filestorage.import	File storage implementation for import files, default is also SMB
filestorage.import.path	Path for the import files used by the SMB file storage implementation
filestorage.mime	File storage implementation for mime files, default is also SMB. Applies only to the Classic Media Asset Provider.
filestorage.mime.path	Path for the import files used by the SMB file storage implementation. Applies only to the Classic Media Asset Provider.
filestorage.export	File storage implementation for export files, default is also SMB
filestorage.export.path	Path for the export files used by the SMB file storage implementation
filestorage.shared	File storage implementation for various shared files, default is also SMB
filestorage.shared.path	Path for various shared files used by the SMB file storage implementation
upload.root.local	Path for the service api file upload
filestorage.dataquality	File storage implementation for data quality (DQ) files, default is also SMB
filestorage.dataquality.path	Path for the data quality (DQ) files used by the SMB file storage implementation
filestorage.bpm	File storage implementation for Informatica BPM (Workflow) files, default is also SMB
filestorage.bpm.path	Path for Informatica BPM (Workflow) files used by the SMB file storage implementation
Informatica BPM Settings (only needed for integration with Informatica BPM)	
infa.bpm.base.url	The base url to the Informatica BPM instance in the form http://[server]:[port]/active-bpel



infa.bpm.workflows.path	The workflows path. Will be used together with the property infa.bpm.base.url to find the endpoints
infa.bpm.user	The username for accessing the Informatica BPM instance. Only required if basic authentication on BPM side is configured
infa.bpm.password	<p>The password for accessing the Informatica BPM instance. Only required if basic authentication on BPM side is configured</p> <div>  If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual. </div>
com.heiler.ppm.bpm.server/proxy	Allows to track any call from the server to the Informatica BPM system using a proxy like Fiddler web debugger, example is localhost:8888, this property is disabled by default
infa.bpm.queue.jms.connection.username	The username for accessing the ActiveMQ service
infa.bpm.queue.jms.connection.password	<p>The password for accessing the ActiveMQ service</p> <div>  If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual. </div>
infa.bpm.queue.jms.queue.suffix	A suffix that will be appended to the default queue name ("infa.bpm"). The suffix can contain characters a-z, 0-9
Inbox/Hot Folder Settings	
inbox.hotfolders	Local folder in which the incoming files should be placed, shares are not supported.
inbox.processingfolder	
inbox.archivefolder	Local folder of the processed inbox files, shares are not supported
inbox.errorfolder	Local folder of the failed files, shares are not supported
Customer license key	
license.customer.file.local	Local path to the license file. Please contact the Informatica Partner Management to obtain a license file.

license.customer.key	Appropriate customer key (in case of multiline keys, use backslash at the end of the line)
Media Asset Server Settings	
mime.defaultProvider	Identifier of the media asset provider. Possible values are HLR which corresponds to the Classic Provider or HMM for the Product 360 - Media Manager. Default is HLR
Informatica MDM Settings (only needed for integration with Informatica MDM)	
infa.mdm.host	
infa.mdm.port	
infa.mdm.base.url	
infa.mdm.systemName	
infa.mdm.user	
infa.mdm.password	<div>  If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual. </div>
Repository Settings	
repository.default.language	<p>The default language of the repository regarding all language specific aspects like e.g. default logical key language. Possible values: Key synonyms of the corresponding language entries defined in the repository enumeration "Enum.Language", e.g. "de" or "en_US" - default is German, if property does not exist.</p> <div>  Note: The repository language MUST NOT be changed as soon as entity data such as items/products/variants or structures/structure groups have been created and exist in the database. In such a situation, the stability of the system can no longer be guaranteed since logical key fields most likely will contain null values. </div>
Mail Server Settings (Change these properties, if you are using workflows, task notification or other functionality that requires sending e-mails)	
mail.host	Host name of the e-mail server
mail.port	If the mail server uses the standard port for the protocol, this property can be left empty.
mail.protocol	E-mail protocol used, currently only SMTP is supported

mail.user	If the e-mail server requires authentication, then the properties "mail.user" and/or "mail.password" must be set.
mail.password	
<div> If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual.</div>	
Various Settings	
context.sessioninactiveinterval	http session timeout sec. if not set no timeout is defined
http.client.proxy	The base URL of the reverse proxy (e.g. Apache WebServer). Mandatory if web links used in email notifications.
Database settings for Microsoft SQL Server (We only describe the default settings here. Most of those can be adjusted individually for each database schema as you will see in the server.properties template file. However, splitting the schemas on multiple database hosts/instances is not supported since there are cross schema sql statements which would not work!)	
db.default.type	This property should never be changed!
db.default.server	The host name of the Microsoft SQL Server; Change this in case you have a separate database server
db.default.port	Port of the Microsoft SQL Server instance, usually this is 1433
db.default.user	User name of the database user
db.default.password	Password of the database user
<div> If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual.</div>	
db.default.dir	Base folder for the database schema and database transaction log files (also used by the database setup) Note: This folder needs not to be local to the application server but to the database server!
db.default.dir.data	Folder for the database schema files (*.mdf) Note: This folder needs not to be local to the application server but to the database server!
db.default.dir.log	Folder for the transaction log files (*.ldf) Note: This folder needs not to be local to the application server but to the database server.
db.default.data.size	Default size in MB allocated for a database schema; adapt this setting to your needs

db.default.data.size.growth	<p>Default increment value in MB allocated when space for a database schema is insufficient; adapt this setting to your needs</p> <div>  In a productive environment you should define the initial size of the database to the expected maximum. A data base growth action always "stops the world" of the database until the files are enlarged. In case the growth size is too small, this might occur very often which is a serious performance problem! </div>
db.default.log.size	Default size in MB allocated for a database transaction log file; adapt this setting to your needs
db.default.log.size.growth	<p>Default increment value in MB allocated when space for a database transaction log file is insufficient; adapt this setting to your needs</p> <p>Default increment value in MB allocated when space for a database schema is insufficient; adapt this setting to your needs</p> <div>  In a productive environment you should define the initial size of the database log files to the expected maximum. A data base growth action always "stops the world" of the database until the files are enlarged. In case the growth size is too small, this might occur very often which is a serious performance problem! </div>
db.default.schema.prefix	Usually, this property needs not to be changed. The common prefix for all Product 360 - Server schemas; it must be in capital and start with a latin character
db.default.schema.suffix	<p>Usually, this property needs not to be changed. The common suffix for all Product 360 - Server schemas; it must be in capital, and start with a latin character</p> <p>This property is helpful to distinguish between productive and test schemas (e.g. _PRO and _TEST)</p>
db.default.debug.show_sql	Usually, this property needs not to be changed. Generated SQL statements during runtime will be shown in the log file. This is a debugging feature which will slow down the application drastically if turned on.
db.default.rowPrefetchSize	Affects the default prefetch size which is especially important for mass data retrieval. In SQL Server there is usually no need to change that.
Database settings for Oracle (we only describe the default settings here. Most of those can be adjusted individually for each database schema as you will see in the server.properties template file. However, splitting the schemas on multiple database hosts/instances is not supported since there are cross schema sql statements which would not work!)	
db.default.type	Never change this property!
db.default.database	Oracle Service Name
db.default.server	The host name of the Oracle server; change this in case you have a separate database server.

db.default.port	<p>Port of the Oracle instance, usually this is 1521</p> <div>  If you want to connect the P360 Server to an Oracle Database via TCPS, please refer to chapter "How to configure Oracle TCPS connection for P360 Server" in the "Server Configuration" manual. </div>
db.default.password	<p>Password for the created schema users</p> <div>  If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual. </div>
db.default.dir	<p>Base folder for the database schema and database transaction log files, used by the database setup too Note: This folder needs not to be local to the application server but to the database server.</p>
db.default.dir.data	<p>Folder for the database schema files Note: This folder needs not to be local to the application server but to the database server.</p>
db.default.dir.tmp	<p>Folder for the database transaction log files Note: This folder needs not to be local to the application server but to the database server.</p>
db.default.dir.index	<p>Folder for the index tablespaces Note: This folder needs not to be local to the application server but to the database server.</p>
db.default.data.size	<p>Default size in MB allocated for a database schema; adapt this setting to your needs</p>
db.default.data.size.growth	<p>Default increment value in MB allocated when space for a database schema is insufficient; adapt this setting to your needs</p> <div>  In a productive environment you should define the initial size of the database log files to the expected maximum. A data base growth action always "stops the world" of the database until the files are enlarged. In case the growth size is too small, this might occur very often which is a serious performance problem! </div>
db.default.temp.size	<p>Default size in MB allocated for a database transaction log file; adapt this setting to your needs</p>

db.default.temp.size.growth	<p>Default increment value in MB allocated when space a transaction log file is insufficient; adapt this setting to your needs</p> <div>  In a productive environment you should define the initial size of the database log files to the expected maximum. A data base growth action always "stops the world" of the database until the files are enlarged. In case the growth size is too small, this might occur very often which is a serious performance problem! </div>
db.default.index.size	Default size in MB allocated for an index tablespace; adapt this setting to your needs
db.default.index.size.growth	<p>Default increment value in MB allocated when space for an index tablespace is insufficient; adapt this setting to your needs</p> <div>  In a productive environment you should define the initial size of the database log files to the expected maximum. A data base growth action always "stops the world" of the database until the files are enlarged. In case the growth size is too small, this might occur very often which is a serious performance problem! </div>
db.default.schema.prefix	The common prefix for all Product 360 - Server schemas; it must be in capital letters!
db.default.schema.suffix	<p>The common suffix for all Product 360 - Server schemas; it must be in capital letters!</p> <p>This property is helpful to distinguish between productive and test schemas (e.g. _PRO and _TEST).</p>
db.default.debug.show_sql	Generated SQL statements during runtime will be shown in the log file. This is a debugging feature which will slow down the application drastically.
db.default.rowPrefetchSize	<p>Affects the default prefetch size which is especially important for mass data retrieval. This value might be modified in case you have a lot of memory. The oracle driver is allocating the complete, theoretically needed memory for a single round trip.</p> <p>In case you run into memory problems because of the Oracle database access, you might want to decrease this property. See also the How to enable Java Management Extensions (JMX).</p>

4.2 Authentication Setup

4.2.1 General Requirements Desktop Waffle SSO

- Server needs to be on Windows
- Client and Server need to run within same domain

4.2.2 Supported Authentication Scenarios

Authentication Scenario	Server Configuration / Requirements	User Entities	Desktop Client	Web Client	Service API / Supplier Portal / Mobile	Automatic User Sync
PIM Internal Auth only	plugin_customization.ini com.heiler.ppm.security.server/login.sso.enabled = false	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AuthenticationMode internal • Domain any value (not considered) 	User Name / Password	User Name / Password	User Name / Password	No
PIM Internal Auth with Waffle SSO	<i>Default configuration</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AuthenticationMode internal • Domain matches Windows domain, e.g. informatica.com 	Silent Login User Name / Password with SHIFT/CTRL	User Name / Password	User Name / Password	No
LDAP	LdapConfig.xml configured plugin_customization.ini com.heiler.ppm.security.server/login.sso.enabled = false	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AuthenticationMode external • Domain matches LDAP domain, e.g. informatica.com 	Ldap User Name / Password	Ldap User Name / Password	Ldap User Name / Password	User creation on login. Periodic sync job for groups.
LDAP with Waffle SSO	LdapConfig.xml configured	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AuthenticationMode external • Domain matches LDAP domain, e.g. informatica.com 	Silent Login Ldap User Name / Password with SHIFT/CTRL	Ldap User Name / Password	Ldap User Name / Password	User creation on login. Periodic sync job for groups.

Authentic ation Scenario	Server Configuratio n / Requirement s	User Entities	Desktop Client	Web Client	Service API / Supplier Portal / Mobile	Automatic User Sync
SAML	SamIConfig.xml configured plugin_customization.ini com.heiler.ppm.security.server/ login.sso.enabled = false	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AuthenticationMode external • Domain any value not considered 	<i>Not possible</i>	SAML SSO only	<i>Not possible</i>	User creation on login in Web.
SAML with LDAP	SamIConfig.xml configured LdapConfig.xml configured SAML user name must match LDAP user name plugin_customization.ini com.heiler.ppm.security.server/ login.sso.enabled = false	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AuthenticationMode external • Domain matches LDAP domain, e.g. informatica.com 	Ldap User Name / Password	SAML SSO Ldap User Name / Password on Login page	Ldap User Name / Password	User creation on login in Web. User creation on login. Periodic sync job for groups for LDAP login.
SAML with Waffle SSO	SamIConfig.xml configured SAML user name must match Windows user name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AuthenticationMode external • Domain matches Windows domain, e.g. INFORMATICA 	Silent Login only	SAML SSO only	<i>Not possible</i>	User creation on login in Web.

Authentication Scenario	Server Configuration / Requirements	User Entities	Desktop Client	Web Client	Service API / Supplier Portal / Mobile	Automatic User Sync
SAML with Waffle SSO and LDAP	SamlConfig.xml configured LdapConfig.xml configured SAML user name must match LDAP user name SAML user name must match Windows user name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Authentication Mode external Domain matches LDAP domain, e.g. informatica.com 	Silent Login Ldap User Name / Password with SHIFT/CTRL	SAML SSO Ldap User Name / Password on Login page	Ldap User Name / Password	User creation on login in Web. User creation on login. Periodic sync job for groups for LDAP login.

4.2.3 LDAP Authentication (LDAPConfig.xml)


The LDAP authentication and synchronisation feature is activated as soon as a valid LDAP configuration is available in the LDAPConfig.xml file which is located in the standard configuration directory. The modification of this file requires a server restart.

An example of this file can be found in the LDAPConfig.xml.template file which can easily be adjusted to your local LDAP environment.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<ldapConfig>
  <directory identifier="myLDAP" domain="myDomain.com" url="ldap://myLdap.com">
    <principal>user@myDomain.com</principal>
    <password>myPassword</password>
    <userConfig objectClass="user" accountNameFilter="(& (sAMAccountName={userName}) (objectClass=user))"
sidFilter="(& (objectSid={sid}) (objectClass=user))">
      <name>sAMAccountName</name>
      <sid>objectSid</sid>
      <groups>memberOf</groups>
    </userConfig>
    <groupConfig objectClass="group" objectFilter="(objectCategory=Group)">
      <name>name</name>
      <description>description</description>
      <sid>objectSid</sid>
      <refreshIntervalInMin>10</refreshIntervalInMin>
    </groupConfig>
  </directory>
</ldapConfig>
```


The LDAP configuration consists of one or more directory configurations which need to be identified by a unique identifier. Each directory has a userConfig and groupConfig element which provides attributes to configure the user and group


access in the directory. For your convenience the template file already has a common configuration which is typically found for Active Directories.

Element/ Attribute	Description
identifier	unique identifier of the directory
domain	The domain which is controlled by this LDAP. In case the LDAP directory controls more than one domain, you can specify multiple directory elements for the same LDAP server, but with different domains.
url	The URL to the LDAP server. <ldap ldaps>://<fullyQualifiedHost>:[Port] You can use ldaps in case you want and can connect to your LDAP server using the SSL protocol (LDAP over SSL), otherwise use ldap. The port is optional, if omitted the default port 389 for ldap and 636 for ldaps will be used.
principal	Each directory requires a management user which is used for the background synchronization of Product 360 users with LDAP. This user must have read privileges to the directory and is provided with a principal (like username@domain.com) and a password. <div> If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual.</div>
password	
UserConfig	
objectClass	the class of the object which represent the users in this directory
accountNameFilter	filter definition to search for the user based on its user name
sidFilter	filter definition to find an user based on his unique SID
name	the property of the LDAP user class which represents the username
sid	the property of the LDAP user class which represents his unique id
groups	the property of the LDAP user class which contains his group memberships
UserGroup Config	
objectClass	the class of the object which represents the user groups in this directory
objectFilter	the filter to use to return all relevant groups (default is all groups in the directory). Adjust this attribute to limit the number of groups in the LDAP group selection in Product 360
name	the property of the LDAP user group class which represents the groups name
sid	the property of the LDAP user group class which represents it's unique id

refreshIntervalInMin	To increase the performance of the Organisation perspective in which LDAP groups are mapped to Product 360 user groups, the LDAP groups will be cached. With the default of ten, the users need to wait 10 minutes until a new LDAP user group appears in Product 360.
----------------------	--

For advanced LDAP configuration see [Advanced LDAP configuration](#). This page also describes how to use PIM with LDAP without a active principal name.

 Please be sure at least one LDAP user group is mapped to a PIM user group for the user to login. Otherwise the login will be rejected and the user will be shown as inactive.


 Please contact your local LDAP directory administrator in case it is unclear how to configure these settings.


4.2.4 SAML Configuration (SamlConfig.xml)


Please see the [SAML Configuration page](#) for details.

4.3 Control Center Configuration (ClusterixConfig.xml)

Open the file <PIM ROOT>\clusterix\configuration\clusterix\ClusterixConfig.xml in an editor and adjust the properties as described:

Property Name	Description	Example
port	The HTTP port which should be used for the Control Center Web UI	9000
clusterixHttpsConfiguration		
enabled	Enables HTTPS for Control Center Web UI.	false
httpsPort	The HTTPS port which should be used for the Control Center Web UI.	443
keyStoreFile	The full path to the keystore file.	D:/keystore.jks
keyStorePassword	The password of the keystore file.	
clusterixLogin		
user	The username which must be used for access to the Control Center	clusterix
password	The password to use for the control center	
	 If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual.	

hpmLogin		
user	The username of the Product 360 user which has Service API access permissions. This user is not needed for the installation process, but later for monitoring Product 360 operations.	rest
password	The password of the Product 360 user <div>  If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual. </div>	


 Important Notice: When using HTTPS for the Control Center, make sure that your certificate is trusted! To do so follow these steps:



- export your certificate from your wanted keystore file by using this command in your java home path:
keytool -export -keystore fullPathToYourKeystoreFile -alias yourChosenAlias -file certificateName.cer
- import your exported certificate into the cacerts file at yourJREHomePath\lib\security by using the following command: **keytool -keystore cacerts -importcert -alias yourChosenAlias -file certificateName.cer**
- restart your system

=> to simplify this process, you can use an external tool named "portecle".

4.4 Network Configuration (NetworkConfig.xml)

Open the file <PIM ROOT>\clusterix\configuration\clusterix\NetworkConfig.xml in an editor and adjust the properties as described:


Element/ Attribute	Description	Example /Default
network	Root element of the network configuration, contains one or more nodes	
node	Represents a server node in the cluster	
identifier	Unique identifier of the node within the network. See <i>-Dppm.nodeIdentifier</i> command line argument below!	pim-server1
host	The host name / IP address this node runs on. Note: Do not use localhost or similar addresses. The host name or IP address in this attribute must be visible from all nodes in the cluster. In case the server has the CLIENTS_SERVER role, it also must be visible from the desktop clients.	
default-role	Default role(s) each server node must have at start time. Available roles are CLIENTS_SERVER and JOB_SERVER. Currently the server roles can not be modified during runtime of the server, but this might change in the future. <div>  mandatory attribute </div>	CLIENTS_SERVER and JOB_SERVER

node/web	Web relevant protocol settings (either HTTP or HTTPS)	
useHttps	Enables/disables the SSL protocol. Default is false - in case you want to enable it, you need to provide a valid SSL certificate	
maxIdleTime	Configures the maximum idle time of all Jetty server connectors. Replaces the com.heiler.ppm.http.jetty.multicontext/maxIdleTime setting in plugin_customization.ini. Since 8.0.03.01.	200000
node/web/http	HTTP specific settings	
port	HTTP port to be used for the web server	
useNio	Use SelectChannelConnector based on non blocking input-output (default is true)	
node/web/https	HTTPS specific settings in case SSL protocol should be used	
port	SSL port	
keystore	Properties for the SSL certificate	
password	<div>  If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual. </div>	
keyPassword	<div>  If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual. </div>	
needClientAuth		
wantClientAuth		
protocol		
algorithm		
keystoreType		

node/web/session-cookie	Configuration for the handling of the session cookie that is managed by the HTTP service (Jetty). Detailed information: SessionCookieConfig JavaDoc	
name	<p>Sets the name that will be assigned to any session tracking cookies created on behalf of the application represented by the ServletContext from which this SessionCookieConfig was acquired.</p> <p>NOTE: Changing the name of session tracking cookies may break other tiers (for example, a load balancing frontend) that assume the cookie name to be equal to the default JSESSIONID, and therefore should only be done cautiously.</p>	
domain	Sets the domain name that will be assigned to any session tracking cookies created on behalf of the application represented by the ServletContext from which this SessionCookieConfig was acquired.	
path	Sets the path that will be assigned to any session tracking cookies created on behalf of the application represented by the ServletContext from which this SessionCookieConfig was acquired.	
comment	<p>Sets the comment that will be assigned to any session tracking cookies created on behalf of the application represented by the ServletContext from which this SessionCookieConfig was acquired.</p> <p>As a side effect of this call, the session tracking cookies will be marked with a <code>Version</code> attribute equal to 1.</p>	
httpOnly	<p>Marks or unmarks the session tracking cookies created on behalf of the application represented by the ServletContext from which this SessionCookieConfig was acquired as <i>HttpOnly</i>.</p> <p>A cookie is marked as <i>HttpOnly</i> by adding the <i>HttpOnly</i> attribute to it. <i>HttpOnly</i> cookies are not supposed to be exposed to client-side scripting code, and may therefore help mitigate certain kinds of cross-site scripting attacks.</p>	
secure	<p>Marks or unmarks the session tracking cookies created on behalf of the application represented by the ServletContext from which this SessionCookieConfig was acquired as <i>secure</i>.</p> <p>One use case for marking a session tracking cookie as secure, even though the request that initiated the session came over HTTP, is to support a topology where the web container is front-ended by an SSL offloading load balancer. In this case, the traffic between the client and the load balancer will be over HTTPS, whereas the traffic between the load balancer and the web container will be over HTTP.</p>	
maxAge	Sets the lifetime (in seconds) for the session tracking cookies created on behalf of the application represented by the ServletContext from which this SessionCookieConfig was acquired.	

node/web/threadPool	Thread pool relevant settings for web. Since 8.0.03.01	
maxThreads	Maximum number of threads in pool that can be created (optional setting). Replaces the http.maxThreads setting in server.properties.	512
maxIdleThreadTime	Maximum idle time in milliseconds for threads in pool (optional setting). Replaces the http.maxIdleThreadTime in server.properties.	60000
node/web/request	Settings for connector requests. Since 8.0.03.01	
bufferSize	Request buffer size in bytes (optional setting). Replaces the com.heiler.ppm.http.jetty.multicontext/request.bufferSize setting in plugin_customization.ini.	16384
headerSize	Request header size in bytes (optional setting). Replaces the com.heiler.ppm.http.jetty.multicontext/request.headerSize setting in plugin_customization.ini.	102400
node/web/response	Settings for connector responses. Since 8.0.03.01	
bufferSize	Response buffer size in bytes (optional setting). Replaces the com.heiler.ppm.http.jetty.multicontext/response.bufferSize setting in plugin_customization.ini.	32768
headerSize	Response header size in bytes (optional setting). Replaces the com.heiler.ppm.http.jetty.multicontext/response.headerSize setting in plugin_customization.ini.	6144
node/data-grid	Settings for the distributed data grid	
port	Port to be used for the data grid connection.	
node/internal	Internal communication protocol settings	
defaultRequestTimeout	Timeout in milliseconds for requests in communication framework	300000 (5 min.)
node/internal/hlr-tcp	Settings for the internal communication protocol	
port	Port for incoming / outgoing connections regarding internal communication	1712
useTLS	true in case the communication between desktop client and server and in between servers should be encrypted using a certificate. If set to true the keyStore element must also be defined (see below). False or omitted to not use TLS encryption.	false

connectTimeout	The timeout in milliseconds when connecting to the host. A value of 0 is interpreted as an infinite timeout. The connection will then block until established or an error occurs.	0
tcpNoDelay	Disables (= true!) resp enables (= false) the so-called Nagle's algorithm	true
keepAlive	Causes a packet (called a "keepalive probe") to be sent to the connected system if a long time (by default, more than 2 hours) passes with no other data being sent or received. This packet is designed to provoke an ACK response from the peer.	true
node/ internal/ thread-pool	Settings for communication framework's thread pool	
maxQueueSize	Maximum size of the request/event processing queue. New processing threads will be created only when the queue is full	100
maxCoreThreads	The maximum number of core threads that are processing request/events. Roughly speaking this is a hint for the thread scheduling strategy which denotes expected number of requests/events to be concurrently processed in a 'normal' operation mode. Scheduling strategy will tend to keep this number of threads in a ready-to-run state. Consider maxQueueSize together with this parameter. For more details concerning scheduling algorithm consult Java SDK ThreadPoolExecutor	100
maxThreads	The maximum number of threads that are processing request/events. This is a hard limit (in comparison with maxCoreThreads). If this value is reached, server will start rejecting requests	1000
keepAliveTime	Time in milliseconds that the thread scheduling strategy will wait, before reducing number of idle threads down to maxCoreThreads. This value protects from the situations when average number of required threads is higher than maxCoreThreads and scheduling strategy is constantly recreating threads, because it tries to reduce number of threads down to maxCoreThreads	300000 (5 min.)
doPrestartAll CoreThreads	Flag value which instructs node to start all core threads on initialization. Usually this value should not be changed from its defaults (which is false). The reason to set this value to true could be the situation when all clients connect to the server together during a short period of time.	false
node/service	Settings for the Service of the Application Server	
identifier	Short identifier of the service	PIM_8.0
name	Name of the service	Informatica PIM_8.0
node/jmx	Settings for the Java Management Extension (JMX) interface. JMX is needed for monitoring the application server using SNMP, the Control Center Web Interface or any JMX Client	
port	Port for the JMX communication	55555

node/snmp	Settings for the SNMP protocol communication	
oid	Object id of the node in the cluster. Each node must have a unique oid.	1.1 (first node) 1.2 (second node) and so on...
node/keyStore	Settings for the keystore location	
file	Path to the keystore file which contains the certificate for the SSL/TLS encrypted communication. The path might be relative to the configuration directory of the server. For example: In case the server application is installed here: C:/Informatica/Product360/server the configuration folder would be C:/Informatica/Product360/server/configuration/HPM. In case you set the file element to certificates\keystore.jks it is expected to be at C:/Informatica/Product360/server/configuration/HPM/certificates/keystore.jks. Alternatively you can define an absolute path.	
password	The password for the keystore	
	 If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual.	

4.4.1 Reverse Proxy Configuration

If a "reverse proxy" is used between Product 360 Desktop and Server, the URL of the proxy server should be configured in the "server.properties" file. The corresponding server-preference is: „http.client.proxy“. The valid value is the base URL of the proxy server (like https://companydomain.com/). This URL will be used in Product 360 Desktop for several components (e.g., RichText-Editor, Multichannel-Preview, Performance installation page) which require a HTTP connection to the Server. If the server-preference „http.client.proxy" is not configured – the default base URL (defined in "Network Configuration") will be used instead.

4.4.2 Setup a keystore for SSL certificates

SSL certificates are optionally used for

- SAML Single Sign On
- Product 360 Rich Client to server encryption
- Jetty SSL connector for Product 360 Web for https communication

Product 360 server uses Java keystores for management of certificates. The keystore can be managed by a command line util keytool.exe which is part of the JDK. The procedure for working with certificates is the same as for other Java-based applications, like Apache Tomcat or Jetty. The keystore needs to be specified in NetworkConfig.xml on the server. Example:

```
<keyStore>
  <file>C:/Informatica/Product360/SSL/keystore.jks</file>
  <password>password</password>
</keyStore>
```

As a keystore contains sensitive information it is not recommended to put them on a shared folder. In a multi-server environment make sure that the same keystore file is available on all server instances.

For testing purposes, it is usually sufficient to use self-generated certificates. A good description can be found in the Tomcat manuals at <http://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-7.0-doc/ssl-howto.html>

For production systems, it is recommended to use certificates of a trusted authority like Verisign, Thawte or GoDaddy. In this case the required steps are:

1. Create a new keystore and generate a private key
2. Create a CSR file (certificate signing request) and provide that to the authority so that they can create a certificate for you. Make sure to use the externally visible host name of your application in the CSR.
3. Import the certificate provided from the authority in your keystore. Also, the root and intermediate certificates need to be imported into the keystore.

Detailed commands for keytool can again be found in the Tomcat manuals at <http://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-7.0-doc/ssl-howto.html>.

An alternative approach for importing certificates from a trusted authority into the Java keystore file is described at <http://xacmlinfo.org/2014/06/13/how-to-keystore-creating-jks-file-from-existing-private-key-and-certificate/>.

Some hints:

- When importing the official certificate, make sure to import it into the same keystore where the private key was generated in. Also you must use the same alias, which was used for the private key.
- You can use "keytool -keystore keyStoreFile -list" to see the content of your keystore. Once all certificates are imported, it should look like this:

```
root, 16.12.2015, trustedCertEntry,  
Certificate fingerprint (SHA1): 47:BE:AB:C9:22:EA:E8:0E:78:78:34:62:A7:9F:45:C2:54:FD:E6:8B  
server, 16.12.2015, PrivateKeyEntry,  
Certificate fingerprint (SHA1): 95:EF:9F:B0:92:F0:D2:41:2F:E7:3B:D3:14:2F:B1:B3:A6:9E:58:10  
intermed, 16.12.2015, trustedCertEntry,  
Certificate fingerprint (SHA1): 27:AC:93:69:FA:F2:52:07:BB:26:27:CE:FA:CC:BE:4E:F9:C3:19:B8
```

- You can use OpenSSL to verify your SSL connection. Once installed, use this command to connect to the Product 360 server:

```
OpenSSL> s_client -connect product360.informatica.com:1712
```

- In case of the error "Failed to establish chain from reply" when importing a certificate back into the keystore, check this Stackoverflow Q&A: <http://stackoverflow.com/questions/23611688/keytool-error-java-lang-exception-failed-to-establish-chain-from-reply>

4.5 Hazelcast configuration (hazelcast.xml)

The hazelcast framework is used as data synchronization mechanism between nodes.

Configuring Hazelcast is not mandatory. Usually the pre-delivered default configuration is sufficient.

Open the file <PIM ROOT>\clusterix\configuration\HPM\hazelcast in an editor and adjust the properties as described in the official Hazelcast configuration documentation: <http://docs.hazelcast.org/docs/3.5/manual/html/hazelcastconfiguration.html>

4.6 Command Line Arguments

Additionally to the Eclipse command line options, Product 360 - Server defines own command line switches which can be used in special cases.

- -Dppm.configuration=<Configuration directory> (default: \${workspace_loc:com.heiler.ppm.configuration.server/conf})
Defines the location of the configuration directory in which the repository and other configuration files are being searched for

- `-Dppm.properties=<name of server configuration file>` (default: `server.properties`)
Defines the name of the property file which specifies the overall server settings like database connections, directories, license file, etc.
- `-Dppm.initdialog.ontop=true|false` (default: `true`)
Defines if the splash screen should be on-top or not. Default is `true`.
- `-Dhpm.repository=<name of repository file>` (default: `Repository.repository`)
Defines the filename of the repository to be loaded, the file has to be located in the configuration directory of the Product 360 - Server.
- `-Dppm.keepRunningOnError=true|false` (default: `false`)
Prevents the server from stopping in case of any error while startup. Use this switch if you want to use the osgi console to debug startup problems.
- `-Dhpm.network.settings.filename=<filename>` (default: `NetworkSettings.xml`)
Defines the filename of the `NetworkSettings`. The file must be located in the configuration directory of the Product 360 - Server (application root/configuration/HPM). (since 5.0)
- `-Dhpm.network.atomic-serialization=true|false`
A switch which forces the communication framework to serialize each request and event message first, before it's being sent to the destination node.
The atomic serialization can help to find (de)serialization issues because the corresponding error message will tell you exactly which parameter of the message failed. Note: activating this switch will decrease the overall system performance especially in multi-user scenarios since the streaming can't be that effective. (since 5.0)
- `-Dppm.excludeInitializers=<id of initializer>,<id of initializer>`
Defines which initializers should be skipped during startup (since 5.1)
- `-Dhpm.show-event-loop-exception=true|false`
Defines if in case of an unhandled event loop exception a dialog should be opened or not.
This switch overrides the `com.heiler.ppm.main/show-event-loop-exception` preference ! (since 5.1)
- `-Dhpm.default.deletion-mode=SOFT|HARD` (default: `SOFT`)
Overrides the default deletion mode for entities which are capable of both, soft and hard delete.
Note: This argument overrides the preference `com.heiler.ppm.std.server/default.deletion-mode`
- `-Dppm.listModelSynchronizer.requeryBoundary=<number of entity items>` (default: `3`)
Defines the number of entity items which must have been created or changed in order to use a list model based approach for synchronizing a list model. In case the number of items is less then the requery boundary a detail model access is issued. Modification of this setting might impact the system performance.

4.7 Application Preferences (`plugin_customization.ini`)

Many functionalities of the Server or Clients can be configured by plug-in specific preferences. All available preferences are documented in the file `<PIM_SERVER_INSTALLATION_ROOT>\server\configuration\HPM\plugin_customization.ini` and can be adjusted there. Changes in this file will override the settings in the individual plugins' `preferences.ini` files. Some settings need special explanation and are listed here for convenience.

Note: You shouldn't store secure information, e.g. passwords, since password encryption is not supported for this file.

4.7.1 Task management

Task background jobs

For tasks, there are several repeating server jobs, which e.g. check for escalated tasks to reassign them or update the item count of dynamic tasks. The repetition interval for these server jobs are configured in `plugin_customization.ini`:


```
# -----
# Task SERVER Settings
# -----
#
# Here you can define the cycle of task jobs.
#
# Specifies how many days a task should be retained after it has been marked as finished.
# The task will be deleted after this interval.
# Default is 0 which means that finished tasks will not be deleted automatically
# com.heiler.ppm.task.server/task.deleteFinishedAfter = 0
#
# interval in which the application will check all tasks for escalation.
# Default is 3600000 (one hour)
# com.heiler.ppm.task.server/task.job.checkEscalation = 3600000
#
# interval in which all tasks will be updated and checked for expiry
# Default is 86400000 (one day)
# com.heiler.ppm.task.server/task.job.update = 86400000
```

Task E-mail notification

Mail server settings

The mail server to be used for the task E-mail notification is specified in server.properties:

```
#####
### Mail Server Settings

# - mail.host: The mail server's host name (mandatory\!)
# - mail.protocol: The protocol to be used (mandatory\!)
# - mail.port: The port to be used (optional, may be kept empty when using the protocol's standard port)
# - mail.user: The user name for authentication (optional, may be kept empty if the server doesn't require authentication)
# - mail.password: The password for authentication (optional, may be kept empty if the server doesn't require authentication)
```



If any other notification level than "None" is specified and the mail server cannot be reached, the application server will not start.

This is by design and is intended to avoid malfunctions after starting a misconfigured server.

To start the server anyway you need to delete the server's workspace to reset the notification level to "None".

Notification level

The default notification level for tasks and the default sender address for outgoing mails is configured in plugin_customization.ini:

```
# -----
# Notification preferences
# -----
#
# The default notification level (1 - None, 2 - Low, 3 - Regular, 4 - Detail)
```

```
# com.heiler.ppm.task.notification.server/default-level = 1

# The default from address for outgoing notifications
# com.heiler.ppm.task.notification.server/from-address = hpm@heiler.com
```

The default notification level is "1 (None)" and the default from address is "hpm@heiler.com". These settings can be changed in the perspective "Task notification" in the client. The user-defined values for the preferences will be stored in the server workspace.

i The default settings in *plugin-customization.ini* are only initial values for the task notification. After changing the settings on client level, the new user-specified settings will be used.

To restore the default values from *plugin-customization.ini*, the server workspace must be deleted.

4.7.2 Product paradigm

In PIM 7, the product data model supports two different so-called product paradigms, which specify the possible hierarchy of how the ArticleType based repository entities can be arranged.

- 2 level product paradigm (2PPD): Products have subordinate items
- 3 level product paradigm (3PPD): Products have subordinate variants, which in turn have subordinate items

The functionality supporting the respective product paradigm has been split into different bundles, meaning that in order to set up the desired mode, only the correct plugins have to be added to/removed from the server and client installation. Following bundles are relevant for the product paradigm configuration and thus need to be considered:

- **com.heiler.ppm.product2g.level2pp.*** - These plugins are only allowed in 2PPD mode and are aggregated into features **com.heiler.ppm.feature.level2pp.server** and **com.heiler.ppm.feature.level2pp.client**.
- **com.heiler.ppm.variant.*** - These plugins are only allowed in 3PPD mode and are aggregated into features **com.heiler.ppm.feature.variant.server** and **com.heiler.ppm.feature.variant.client**.

Standard delivery

By default, the Product Manager is shipped with a 2PPD setup, meaning that the **com.heiler.ppm.feature.level2pp.server/client** features already reside in the server and client installations.

Setting up 3PPD mode

Perform the following steps in order to run the Product Manager in 3PPD mode:

1. Add the additional variant features to the server and client installation. The **com.heiler.ppm.feature.variant.*** features needed for activating the 3PPD are shipped within two separate ZIP files for server and client:
 - a. **PIM_8.0.x_server_variant.zip** - Unpack content into server installation folder (e.g. C:\Informatica\PIM\server)
 - b. **PIM_8.0.x_client_variant.zip** - Unpack content into client installation folder (e.g. C:\Informatica\PIM\client)
2. Remove the **com.heiler.ppm.product2g.level2pp.*** and **com.heiler.ppm.web.product.level2pp*** plugins from the server and client installation's *plugins* folder.
3. Remove the **com.heiler.ppm.feature.level2pp*** and **com.heiler.ppm.feature.web.level2pp*** features from the server and client installation's *features* folder.

i It is NOT necessary to adapt the Product 360 - Server repository when configuring the product paradigm, this is performed automatically during server startup.

However, it may be necessary to clean up the workspace of the Server folder (except "HPM" folder) with the server restart in order to have everything in sync again.

Setting up 1PPD mode

This works out of the box in Desktop Client. To disable products in Web Client, please run the following steps:

1. Open the /plugins directory on the server
2. Remove the plug-ins **com.heiler.ppm.web.product*** and **com.heiler.ppm.web.product.level2pp***.

No additional plug-ins are needed. This will hide all options regarding products and will make the master catalog to load items instead of products on activation.

4.7.3 Characteristics

MIME values

In order to delete unused files that were used as characteristic values, there is a the system job "Remove obsolete MIME files". You can configure when this job should run in the plugin_customization.ini in the section "Characteristic and characteristic records SERVER Settings" using the preference `com.heiler.ppm.article.server/cleanup.job.characteristicMIMEs.repeatPattern`. The repeat pattern consists of a cron expression. See Quartz Enterprise Job Scheduler documentation for more details about the syntax. Don't forget to uncomment the line.

By default the job runs every Saturday at 9 PM.

4.7.4 Database version check

Every release of the Product 360 Server has been tested against a certain number of database versions. During the lifetime of an Product 360 - Server installation it might be that you need to update the database to a not (yet) approved version. This might happen by accident (automatic windows updates) or on purpose due to company orders.

For such situations we provide a way to overwrite the database versions which we check against at application server startup.

Open the `plugin_configuration.ini` file which is located in your `<PIM_SERVER>/configuration/HPM` directory.

You will find a section called Version SERVER Settings which provides you with the properties you can adjust.

Please don't forget to uncomment the corresponding line (remove the #).



In case you can't find the section, you might have a product version in which this setting has not been made public. However, you can just add the corresponding property to the file.

`com.heiler.ppm.version.server/version.dbms.MSSQL2008 = <YOUR VERSION>` (example: 10.0.1600.22)

`com.heiler.ppm.version.server/version.dbms.MSSQL2005 = <YOUR VERSION>` (example: 11.1.0.6.0)

`com.heiler.ppm.version.server/version.dbms.ORA11g = <YOUR VERSION>` (example: 10.2.0.3.0)

`com.heiler.ppm.version.server/version.dbms.ORA10g = <YOUR VERSION>` (example: 11.1.0.6.0)



Please note, we cannot guarantee the full compatibility of the Product 360 Server against every single database version unless they have been tested by our QA department. If you encounter errors which might originate due to the unsupported database version we might not be able to help you in a timely manner.

4.8 Repository configuration (Repository.repository)



Modifications of the repository should only be done by System Administrators which have been trained for this. Please see also the [repository documentation](#) in the SDK documentation.

4.8.1 Changing the default language of the repository

Sub entities of the repository are usually pre-qualified by default values directly in the repository. Especially the default language for language dependent fields is subject to be changed for a concrete installation environment, so the users do not have to re-qualify every column all the time. Please note that a modification of the default qualification in the repository affects all clients belonging to the server.

Note: The repository language **MUST NOT** be changed as soon as entity data such as items/products/variants or structures/structure groups have been created and exist in the database. In such a situation, the stability of the system can no longer be guaranteed since logical key fields most likely will contain null values.

As of PIM7, it is no longer necessary to keep language dependent versions of the repository file for configuring the repository's default language. These language dependent aspects are automatically configured during repository initialization, adjustable by a server property (`repository.default.language` - possible values: All key synonyms of the corresponding language entries defined in the repository enumeration "Enum.Language", e.g. "de" or "en_US" - default is German). The repository file in `<server installation folder>/configuration/HPM/repository.repository` no longer contains any hard wired language dependent enum keys, but a placeholder instead, which is replaced during server startup.

Since PIM 7.0.01 the server will check if all attributes of item/product/variant and structure are maintained in the repository default language key. The server won't start if any such entry will be found. The occurred error in the server log will look like this:

```
The database 'HPM_MAIN' contains invalid structure feature entries. '3' entries have been found which aren't maintained in the repository language German.
```

If you get this message please check out Troubleshooting for this behavior.

4.8.2 Adding a new language to the Repository

1. Take a look at the Language tables in the database and find the language you want to add. If you can't find it there, it might be that the language needs to be added to the database tables.
2. Open the `<server installation folder>/configuration/HPM/repository.repository` file with the Repository Editor from your installation package
3. Find the enumeration "Enum.Language" in the custom area of the repository.
4. Add a new entry to this enumeration, using the ID of the language record of the database as key value.
5. Do not forget to add also the locale identifier(s) for your language, especially in case you also want to use this language as the GUI language of the client (which might require the corresponding language pack licenses too)

4.8.3 Adding a new language to the database

In the database there are 3 tables which hold language information. Language, LanguageLang and LanguageISOcodes. All must be filled with the corresponding values in order to make this new language available to the system.

Since the ID's are not just incremented and they need to match for all installations and further updates it is **not recommended** to insert the new values by yourself. We strongly recommend to *open a ticket with our Global Support* so they can provide you an update script which then will automatically be added to the standard product with the next releases.

For documentation purposes we document here the statements which are necessary to insert a new language in the tables:

Example for language 'Romanian'

```
INSERT INTO "Language" ( "ID", "Visible", "DisplayOrder", "Alpha3Code", "Locale") VALUES ( 1048, 0, 2147483647, N'ron', N'ro');
```

```

INSERT INTO "LanguageISOCodes" ( "ID", "LanguageID", "AlphaCode") VALUES ( 800, 1048, N'ron');
INSERT INTO "LanguageISOCodes" ( "ID", "LanguageID", "AlphaCode") VALUES ( 801, 1048, N'ro');

INSERT INTO "LanguageLang" ( "ID", "LanguageID", "Name") VALUES ( 1048, 7, N'Romänisch');
INSERT INTO "LanguageLang" ( "ID", "LanguageID", "Name") VALUES ( 1048, 9, N'Romanian');

```



Language ID and AlphaCode

The required language ID is based on the languages defined by Microsoft called Locale ID (LCID). Use the value from the column "LCID Dec" when adding a language.

To get the corresponding AlphaCodes are based on the ISO 639. For the two letter code use ISO 639-1 and for the three letter code use ISO 639-2/T. A list with available codes can be found on Wikipedia.

4.9 Application Modules configuration (application_modules.properties)

Application modules include functionality which can be activated/deactivated for the whole application regardless of the user group membership. If a module is deactivated then all views, perspectives but even fields, entities and enumerations are not visible/available in the application. The availability of modules can be configured in the server-side file

application_modules.properties which is located in the folder
"<PIM_SERVER_INSTALLATION_ROOT>\server\configuration\HPM\".

By default following application modules are activated/deactivated:

```

# Defines if the GDSN extension is installed (true) or not (false)
GDSN = false

# Defines if the GDSN pool "IM" is used (true) or not (false) if the GDSN extension is installed.
gdsn_pool_im = true

# Defines if the GDSN pool "DSE" is used (true) or not (false) if the GDSN extension is installed.
gdsn_pool_dse = false

# Defines if the GDSN extension is used in "data source" mode (true) or not (false) if installed.
gdsn_data_source = true

# Defines if the GDSN extension is used in "data recipient" mode (true) or not (false) if installed.
gdsn_data_recipient = false

# Defines if the food and beverage module is activated (true) or deactivated (false).
FoodAndBeverage = false

```

4.10 Spelling dictionaries

Here is a suggestion of sites where you can find spellchecker dictionaries. Please check and respect the particular rights and licences.

<http://extensions.services.openoffice.org/dictionary>

http://src.chromium.org/viewvc/chrome/trunk/deps/third_party/hunspell_dictionaries/
http://www.altova.com/dictionaries.html
https://addons.mozilla.org/de/thunderbird/language-tools/
https://wiki.mozilla.org/L10n:Dictionaryes

These dictionaries consist of two files: one file with the basic words and one file with the grammatical rules. Once this files are copied in the specific dictionary folder (which can be configured in the *plugin_customization.ini*) on the PIM server, at the next server start they will be converted in the flat word lists, which can be used from the PIM spellchecker.

We recommend using of following standard dictionaries:

German	http://extensions.services.openoffice.org/en/project/dict-de_DE_frami
US English	http://extensions.services.openoffice.org/en/project/en_US-dict

To install the spelling standard dictionaries please do following:

1. Download a spellchecking dictionary e.g from one of the sources listed above.
2. Extract the corresponding **"*.dic"** and **"*.aff"** files.
3. Make sure that both files are encoded with **ANSI**. If necessary - change the encoding of both files and save them (e.g. using "Notepad++" - file menu "Encoding" -> "Convert to ANSI").
4. Copy these files in the folder configured in the *plugin_customization.ini* as *com.heiler.ppm.spelling.server/sourceDictionariesFolder*.
The default value is **{CONF}/dictionaries/source**, where **{CONF}** is the placeholder of the configuration folder of the PIM-Server.
5. The file pattern for the dictionary files is: **{LANGUAGE}_{COUNTRY}.dic** and **{LANGUAGE}_{COUNTRY}.aff** (e.g. *en_US.dic*, *en_US.aff*). So rename the copied files if necessary.
6. Then at the next server start the source files will be converted in the word lists and cached in the dictionary cache folder (which is also configured in the *plugin_customization.ini*).

4.11 Media Asset Management Configuration

4.11.1 Media Manager

The configuration of the Media Manager is described in [Product 360 Core and PIM - Media Manager Configuration](#).

4.11.2 Classic Provider

Preview Generation Parameters


Configuration is done in the *C:\heiler\server\configuration\HPM\plugin_customization.ini* file. The parameters concerning the build-in media asset provider configuration can be found in the section *MediaAssetProvider*. The following table lists these parameters (simplifying readability, the preceding string *com.heiler.ppm.mediaasset.server.heiler/* has been omitted here):

Parameter	Description	Default value
previewSize	Image size of the preview (height x width) in pixel displayed(e.g. in "Image preview" view). The dimensions of the image will be changed only if its width or height exceeds the corresponding geometry specification. These thumbnails are stored in the folder \$(filestorage.mime.path)\hlr-pv	1000
thumbsizeSmall	Image size of small thumbnails (height x width) in pixel displayed in table views. The dimensions of the image will be changed only if its width or height exceeds the corresponding geometry specification. These thumbnails are stored in the folder \$(filestorage.mime.path)\hlr-ts.	32
thumbsizeNormal	Image size of normal sized thumbnails (height x width) in pixel displayed in the "Miniature view (documents)" and "Miniature view. The dimensions of the image will be changed only if its width or height exceeds the corresponding geometry specification. These thumbnails are stored in the folder \$(filestorage.mime.path)\hlr-tn.	100
thumbsizeBig	Image size of big thumbnails (height x width) in pixel. The dimensions of the image will be changed only if its width or height exceeds the corresponding geometry specification. These thumbnails are stored in the folder \$(filestorage.mime.path)\hlr-tb.	100
thumbnailFileType	File type of thumbnails. Possible values are "jpg" and "png".	jpg
dpi	Resolution of thumbnails.	50
systemDirectoryName	The name of the system directory which is a folder under \$(filestorage.mime.path) with following properties: 1) It can not be deleted by application. 2) It will not be changed by import. 3) It stores all files which are assigned per DND to a article/product/variant/structureGroup in Product 360 desktop. If unspecified, the system will create the folder hlr-system automatically.	hlr-system
blacklistExtensions	Comma separated list of file extensions which should not be supported by classic provider.	chm,db,doc,docx,eps,exe,html,html,jar,log,pdf,ps,rar,txt,xls,xlsx,zip
numberOfThreadsInitValue	Number of threads which are used by initialization of the corresponding thread pools in HeilerClassic Provider, such thread pools schedules the job for execution of GrphicsMagick, or other parallel work. After start of the hpm server, the value of numberOfThread can be also changed by JMX tooling in real time.	10

The preview generation process can be customized by means of configuration parameters in the section *Heiler MediaAssetProvider* of the C:\Heiler\server\configuration\HPM\plugin_customization.ini file.

Parameter	Description
com.heiler.graphicsmagick/gm.execute.timeoutMsec	GraphicsMagic execute timeout. Gm.exe is considered as busy or crashed if there is no result after it takes longer than this time. An exception will be throws in this case. Default is 120.000 ms (2 minutes).

Previews for PS, EPF, PDF, HTML and other formats.

 In the basic configuration GraphicsMagick supports already many file formats, but not for PS, EPS, PDF and HTML files. Use the Informatica Media Manager for advanced capabilities.

Running "Classic MediaAssetProvider" with unicode encoded folder names

GraphicMagic can't handle unicode characters. Without changing the windows settings accordingly, you will get an error message like this

```
CommunicationWorker-14 ServerImageManager Error while loading file in
graphicsmagick
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 |
org.eclipse.core.runtime.CoreException: An error occurred while running gm.exe.
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 |
C:\Heiler\server\plugins\com.heiler.graphicsmagick.win32_4.5.0\os\win32\x86\gm.exe
identify: Unable to open file (c:\Shared\Test????\123.jpg) Invalid argument.
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 |
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.graphicsmagick.internal.ProcessExecutor.postErrorHandling(ProcessExecutor.java:189)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.graphicsmagick.internal.ProcessExecutor.runGuarded(ProcessExecutor.java:143)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.graphicsmagick.command.InfoCommand.executeAsExternalProcess(InfoCommand.java:238)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.graphicsmagick.command.InfoCommand.execute(InfoCommand.java:225)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.ppm.mediaasset.server.heiler.ServerImageManager.getProperties(ServerImageManager.java:499)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.ppm.mediaasset.server.heiler.HeilerClassic.getMediaAssetFileProperties(HeilerClassic.java:2966)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.ppm.mediaasset.server.heiler.HeilerClassic.getMediaAssetFileProperties(HeilerClassic.java:3090)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.ppm.mediaasset.server.handler.GetMediaAssetFileProperties.onMessage(GetMediaAssetFileProperties.java:77)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.ppm.communication.core.internal.node.AbstractNode.processRequestMessageForOurself(AbstractNode.java:398)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.ppm.communication.core.internal.node.AbstractNode.processLowLevelMessageForOurself(AbstractNode.java:295)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.ppm.communication.core.internal.node.ServerNodeImpl.processLowLevelMessage(ServerNodeImpl.java:554)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
com.heiler.ppm.communication.core.internal.node.AbstractNode$LowLevelMessageRunnable.run(AbstractNode.java:214)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
java.util.concurrent.ThreadPoolExecutor$Worker.runTask(ThreadPoolExecutor.java:886)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
```



```

java.util.concurrent.ThreadPoolExecutor$Worker.run(ThreadPoolExecutor.java:908)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | at
java.lang.Thread.run(Thread.java:619)
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 |
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | !ENTRY com.heiler.graphicsmagick 4 10
2011-03-03 20:25:20.631
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | !MESSAGE An error occurred while
running gm.exe.
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 |
C:\Heiler\server\plugins\com.heiler.graphicsmagick.win32_4.5.0\os\win32\x86\gm.exe
convert: Unable to open file (c:\Shared\Test\???\22581_250x286test.jpg)
Invalid argument.
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 |
INFO | jvm 1 | 2011/03/03 20:25:20 | 20:25:20,522 ERROR

```

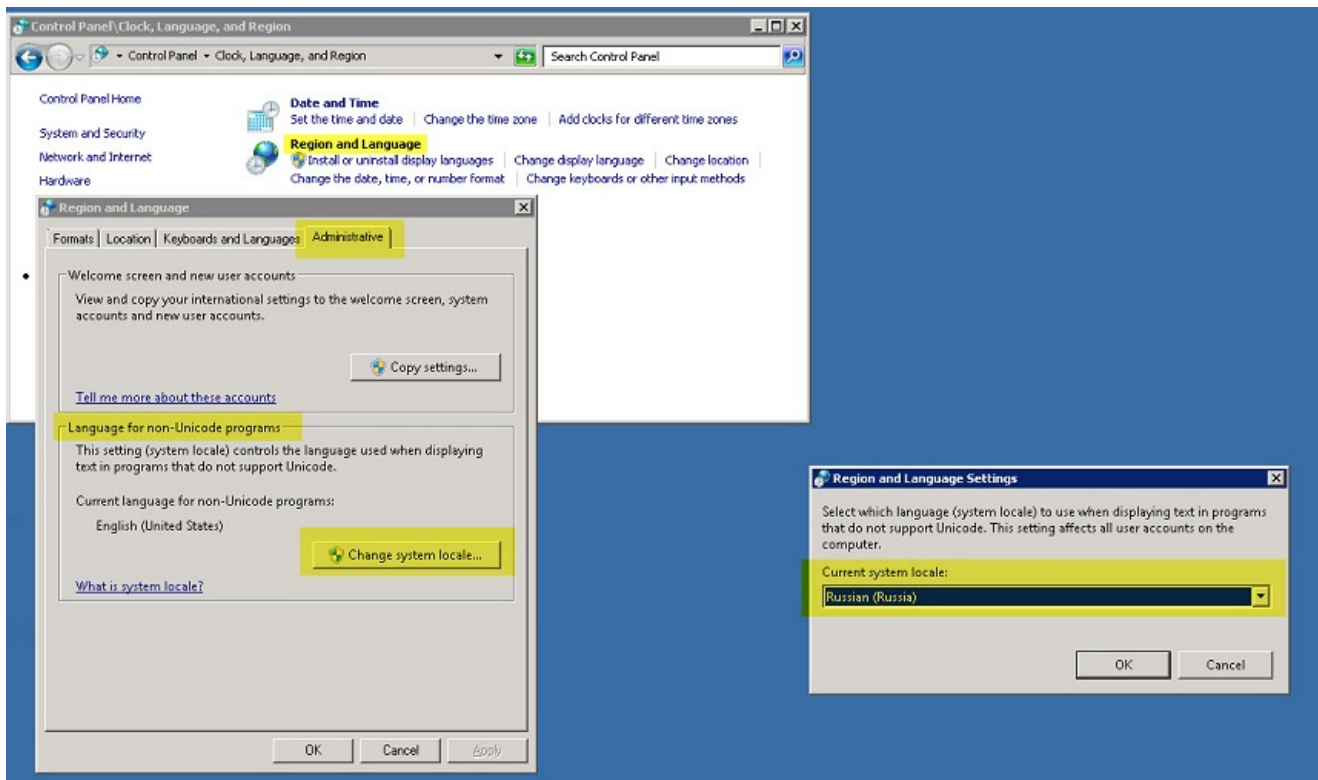
It works again with the correct language configuration of windows. Please make sure the language type of your file names (and folder names) is consistent with the one which you set as "Language for non-Unicode programs"



Windows Server 2008

Control Panel -> Regional and Language Options -> Administrative tab -> Change system locale

Select a language which contains the letters you want to use (see picture below)




4.12 Security logging

All login activities are logged by default in a separate file `securityLogin.log` as well as persisted in the database. The date, login name and the source will be logged. To disable the logging in the database you have to set the field `User.LastLoginDate` to inactive. If you only want to deactivate the file logging, you can adjust the `log4j.xml` and remove `SECURITY_LOGIN` section.

4.12.1 Setup a keystore for SSL certificates

4.13 Advanced LDAP configuration

 The advanced LDAP settings are available since 8.0.03.03, 8.0.5.01

With the Elements/Attributes it is possible to adjust PIM to special LDAP environments. Especially if user authentication should not be done by the `userPrincipalName` (`username@domain`).

The following values are optional and additional to the parameters mentioned in "Server Configuration" -> "Authentication Setup" -> "LDAP Authentication (LDAPConfig.xml)" chapter.

Element/Attribute	Description
serviceBindDN	(optional) Used to authenticate the management user. Overwrite <code><principal></code>
domainComponentIdentifier	(optional) Used to identify domain tokens. Default is 'DC'
UserConfig	
accountBindDN	(optional) Used to authenticate user. <code>{userName}</code> will be replaced with entered user name. <code>{domainName}</code> will be replaced with attribute <code>domain</code> value of directory. Default is authentication by principal name.
accountNameFilterBaseDN	(optional) Root node for <code>accountNameFilter</code> to filter user. Default is DC values to build the domain (like <code>DC=domain,DC=com</code>).

Find a view samples below. It is possible to combine the LDAP fields and adjust the filters for the existing LDAP setup.

4.13.1 uid example

This sample uses the `uid` to authenticate and filter the users.

Action	LDAP field
Authenticate manager user	<code>uid</code>
Authenticate client user	<code>uid</code>
Filter client user	<code>uid</code>

LDAP configuration		Additional comments
DC identifier	<code>dc</code>	The domain setup looks like <code>'dc=myDomain,dc=com'</code>

LDAP configuration		Additional comments
User object class	inetOrgPerson	
Group object class	groupOfNames	

```
<ldapConfig>
  <directory identifier="myLDAP" domain="myDomain.com" url="ldap://myLdap.com">
    <principal>user@myDomain.com</principal>
    <password>myPassword</password>
    <serviceBindDN>serviceUserUid</serviceBindDN>
    <domainComponentIdentifier>dc</domainComponentIdentifier>
    <userConfig objectClass="inetOrgPerson" accountNameFilter="(&uid={userName})(objectClass=inetOrgPerson)"
sidFilter="(&(objectSid={sid})(objectClass=inetOrgPerson))" accountBindDN="{userName}"
accountNameFilterBaseDN="dc=myDomain,dc=com">
      <name>cn</name>
      <sid>objectSid</sid>
      <groups>groupMembership</groups>
    </userConfig>
    <groupConfig objectClass="groupOfNames" objectFilter="(objectCategory=groupOfNames)">
      <name>name</name>
      <description>description</description>
      <sid>objectSid</sid>
      <refreshIntervalInMin>10</refreshIntervalInMin>
    </groupConfig>
  </directory>
</ldapConfig>
```

4.13.2 CN example

This sample uses the CN to authenticate and filter the users.

Action	LDAP field
Authenticate manager user	CN
Authenticate client user	CN
Filter client user	CN

LDAP configuration		Additional comments
DC identifier	DC	The domain setup looks like 'DC=myDomain,DC=com
User object class	user	
Group object class	group	
All your PIM users are below your OU	yourOrg	

```
<ldapConfig>
```

```

<directory identifier="myLDAP" domain="myDomain.com" url="ldap://myLdap.com">
  <principal>user@myDomain.com</principal>
  <password>myPassword</password>
  <serviceBindDN>CN=serviceUser,OU=yourOrg,DC=myDomain,DC=com</serviceBindDN>
  <domainComponentIdentifier>DC</domainComponentIdentifier>
  <userConfig objectClass="user" accountNameFilter="(& (CN={userName},OU=yourOrg,DC=myDomain,DC=com)
(objectClass=user))" sidFilter="(& (objectSid={sid})(objectClass=user))"
accountBindDN="CN={userName},OU=yourOrg,DC=myDomain,DC=com"
  accountNameFilterBaseDN="OU=yourOrg,DC=myDomain,DC=com">
    <name>sAMAccountName</name>
    <sid>objectSid</sid>
    <groups>groupMembership</groups>
  </userConfig>
  <groupConfig objectClass="group" objectFilter="(objectCategory=group)">
    <name>name</name>
    <description>description</description>
    <sid>objectSid</sid>
    <refreshIntervalInMin>10</refreshIntervalInMin>
  </groupConfig>
</directory>
</ldapConfig>

```

4.13.3 Do not determine domain from username

By default P360 server tries to determine the user and the domain value from the given typed in user name. This means that given input user@domain.com will split into 2 parts. 'user' is used as user name - 'domain.com' is used as domain. The same if you use the pattern domain.com\user.

This default behavior can be changed via the parameter <extractDomainFromUserName>. This parameter is not mandatory and the default value is true. The value is used for all available <directory> entries. If the value is set to true the typed input is used as user name without any changes.

A sample configuration would look like this.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<ldapConfig>
  <directory identifier="myLDAP" domain="myDomain.com" url="ldap://myLdap.com">
    <principal>user@myDomain.com</principal>
    <password>myPassword</password>
    <userConfig objectClass="user" accountNameFilter="(& (sAMAccountName={userName})(objectClass=user))"
sidFilter="(& (objectSid={sid})(objectClass=user))">
      <name>sAMAccountName</name>
      <sid>objectSid</sid>
      <groups>memberOf</groups>
    </userConfig>
    <groupConfig objectClass="group" objectFilter="(objectCategory=Group)">
      <name>name</name>
      <description>description</description>
      <sid>objectSid</sid>
      <refreshIntervalInMin>10</refreshIntervalInMin>
    </groupConfig>
  </directory>
  <extractDomainFromUserName>false</extractDomainFromUserName>
</ldapConfig>

```

4.14 EH-Cache Configuration

Caching is a difficult topic in every application and it's hard to predict which cache is useful and which isn't. Mainly because this is driven by the use cases the user execute on the system, manual ones, or automatic ones.

This page should give some simple overview.

In Product 360 we have multiple various caches which support different use cases. Some of those caches are designed in a ways that their content always needs to be in memory and therefore those caches can not really be adjusted by the user. Others are more transparent in their performance impacts and are provided using the EH-Cache framework.

EH-Cache is an open source caching framework which allows to create cache structures within the application which can then be configured and monitored from outside. The configuration of caches which are implemented using this framework is done in the `ehcache.xml` file within the `configuration/hpm` folder of the control center, respectively the application server.

For detail on the general structure of the `ehcache.xml` file, we kindly ask you to see the official eh-cache documentation. However, for the purpose of this document we will use a small part of it.

4.14.1 General Cache configuration

Mandatory Attributes	Description
name	Sets the name of the cache. This is used to identify the cache. It must be unique. This must never be changed as the application uses the name to find the configuration!
maxElementsInMemory	Sets the maximum number of objects that will be created in memory
maxElementsOnDisk	Sets the maximum number of objects that will be maintained in the DiskStore. The default value is zero, meaning unlimited.
eternal	Sets whether elements are eternal. If eternal, timeouts are ignored and the element is never expired.
overflowToDisk	Sets whether elements can overflow to disk when the memory store has reached the <code>maxInMemory</code> limit.
Optional Attributes	Description
timeToIdleSeconds	Sets the time to idle for an element before it expires. i.e. The maximum amount of time between accesses before an element expires Is only used if the element is not eternal. Optional attribute. A value of 0 means that an Element can idle for infinity. The default value is 0.
timeToLiveSeconds	Sets the time to live for an element before it expires. i.e. The maximum time between creation time and when an element expires. Is only used if the element is not eternal. Optional attribute. A value of 0 means that an Element can live for infinity. The default value is 0.
diskPersistent	Whether the disk store persists between restarts of the Virtual Machine. The default value is false.
diskExpiryThreadIntervalSeconds	The number of seconds between runs of the disk expiry thread. The default value is 120 seconds.

diskSpoolBufferSizeMB	This is the size to allocate the DiskStore for a spool buffer. Writes are made to this area and then asynchronously written to disk. The default size is 30MB. Each spool buffer is used only by its cache. If you get OutOfMemory errors consider lowering this value. To improve DiskStore performance consider increasing it. Trace level logging in the DiskStore will show if put back ups are occurring.
clearOnFlush	Whether the MemoryStore should be cleared when flush() is called on the cache. By default, this is true i.e. the MemoryStore is cleared.
memoryStoreEvictionPolicy	Policy would be enforced upon reaching the maxElementsInMemory limit. Default policy is Least Recently Used (specified as LRU). Other policies available - First In First Out (specified as FIFO) and Less Frequently Used (specified as LFU)

Specific Caches

List Model Cache

The List Model Cache is mainly used in the Rest Service API of Product 360 - specifically for the purpose of "paging" in larger list model. In case client application don't want to, or just can't process large list models at once, they have the possibility to use the ListModel cache in order to do that. This way the larger list model is kept on the server until the time to live is expired or the client sends an evict message.

The ehCache.xml file has two cache configurations predefined. One specific for the Item entity (**listModel.Article**) and one for all other entities (**listModel._shared**). As described in the ehCache.xml file you can also add a specific configuration for other entities if needed. The application will check if there is an appropriate configuration in the ehCache.xml file, and if not will use the listModel._shared.

An "element" in the context of a list model cache is a "full list model", not single rows of the model.

```
<!-- shared cache for list models. Comment it to disable shared list mode caching -->
<cache
  name="listModel._shared"
  maxElementsInMemory="100"
  eternal="false"
  timeToIdleSeconds="600"
  timeToLiveSeconds="3600"
  overflowToDisk="false"
  memoryStoreEvictionPolicy="LRU"
/>
```

```
<!-- entity specific cache for list models. use 'listmodel.' prefix to configure cache for a specific
entity -->
<cache
  name="listModel.Article"
  maxElementsInMemory="100"
  eternal="false"
  timeToIdleSeconds="600"
  timeToLiveSeconds="3600"
  overflowToDisk="false"
  memoryStoreEvictionPolicy="LRU"
/>
```

4.15 How to configure Oracle TCPS connection for P360 Server

4.15.1 Prerequisite

In order to establish a TCPS connection, ensure, that the Oracle server's public key certificate is known by the P360 Server's Java Runtime Environment (JRE). There are different possibilities to achieve this. Please refer to the JSSE Reference Guide (<https://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/technotes/guides/security/jsse/JSSERefGuide.html>) and here especially the chapters "Creating an X509TrustManager" and "Creating a Keystore to Use with JSSE".

4.15.2 Configure P360 Server

Ensure to do the following configuration changes on all P360 Servers. The easiest and safest way to achieve this, is to change the configuration files and then deploy them to all P360 Servers via P360 Control Center. The P360 application servers need to be restarted in order to have changes take effect.

- in **server/configuration/HPM/server.properties**:
 - specify the Oracle Server's TCPS port as value of the property **db.default.port** (and naturally also the other database parameters like host, database,...). For details, please refer to the chapter "[Server Configuration](#)".
- in **server/configuration/HPM/database/main.properties.template.ORA11g**, **master.properties.template.ORA11g** and **supplier.properties.template.ORA11g**
 - change the protocol to "**tcps**" in the property **hibernate.connection.url**
- in **server/configuration/HPM/quartz/quartz.properties.template.ORA11g**
 - change the protocol to "**tcps**" in the property **org.quartz.dataSource.PPM_MAIN.URL**
- in **server/configuration/HPM/database/uda/uda-jdbcpool.xml.template.ORA11g**
 - for all **<datasource>** tags (PCM_MAIN, PCM_MASTER and PCM_SUPPLIER), change the protocol to "**tcps**" in the property **url**

If JBPM is activated for the P360 Server, then also change the following:

- in **server/plugins/org.jbpm_.../conf/** edit **hibernate.cfg.xml.template.ORA10g** and **hibernate.cfg.xml.template.ORA11g**:
 - change the protocol to "**tcps**" in property "**hibernate.connection.url**"

4.16 SAML Configuration



This guide describes the necessary steps to configure Product 360 for usage with SAML Single Sign On (Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) or Shibboleth). SAML support has been introduced with Product 360 v8.0.02.

4.16.1 Overview

Roles

The SAML specification defines three roles:

- the Principal (typically a user)
- the Identity Provider (IdP) e.g. AD FS, OKTA or Shibboleth
- and the Service Provider (SP) in our case Product 360

This section describes all steps necessary to setup Single Sign On via SAML in PIM 360.

In general, if you want to know more about what SAML SSO is, documentations can be found on the official SAML

documentation pages provided by the OASIS consortium.

In such documentations the term "Service Provider" can be replaced by "Product 360" and the term "User agent" can be replaced by "Browser" in case of Web based SSO scenarios.

Single Sign On flow

Product 360 supports two ways for Single Sign On. Service Provider initiated and Identity Provider initiated Single Sign On.

Service Provider Initiated

In this scenario

1. The principal requests a service from the service provider (e.g. access to a web resource within Product 360).
2. To provide this resource to the principal the service provider redirects user authentication (AuthRequest) to the identity provider.
3. In case the user is not yet authenticated at the Identity Provider, the IdP requests credentials from the user, e.g. by presenting a login form with username and password.
4. The IdP sends an identity assertion (SAML Assertion like a security token) for the principal. On basis of this assertion, the service provider can make a decision to provide the resource to the principal or not.
5. The SP ensures that the user is directed to the initially requested resource.

Identity Provider Initiated

In this scenario, there is no initial authentication request from the SP. Instead, the IdP provides links to the SP to certain SP resources. IdP initiated Single Sign On is started when clicking on such a link.

1. The user clicks on an IdP provided link to access a resource in the SP.
2. In case the user is not yet authenticated at the Identity Provider, the IdP requests credentials from the user, e.g. by presenting a login form with username and password.
3. The SP directly receives an identity assertion for the principal. On basis of this assertion, the service provider can make a decision to provide the resource to the principal or not.
4. The SP ensures that the user is directed to the resource given in the assertion information.

Product 360 SAML support

- HTTP communication security is ensured by SSL between the IdP and SP.
- Messages can be signed and encrypted to ensure message-level security. This includes:
 - signing of AuthRequest message from SP to IdP
 - signing of SAML Assertions
 - encryption of SAML Assertions
- While the IdP is signing the assertions, this allows Product 360 to verify against the IdP's public X509 certificate that this assertion's where issued by exactly this IdP.
- Optionally supplying Product 360 with a public X509 certificate and private key allows Product 360, as the SP, to sign outgoing requests to the IdP, as well as decrypt assertions from the IdP.
- To take advantage of these security features, the IdP must be configured to validate signatures and encrypt assertions using the same private key and public X509 certificate that Product 360 uses to sign outgoing requests to the IdP.
- Product 360 signs outgoing messages to the IdP with the SHA1 hashing algorithm. Product 360 supports incoming messages from the IdP signed with the SHA1 or SHA256 hashing algorithms.
- Product 360 can decrypt assertions from IdP, encrypted with AES-128, AES-256, or Triple DES encryption algorithms.
- Passwords are never transmitted as part of a SAML authentication request or response. Requests only contains the username and (optional) any additional metadata (username, domain, etc.) that was configured by the IdP administrator. The optional information can be used for automatic user creation.

4.16.2 Preparation steps

Certificate keystores

i For AD FS, it is necessary to have https enabled. Therefore you need a keystore file, which has to be provided for each node.

Product 360 currently operates only on JKS format keystores. The JKS format is Java's standard "Java KeyStore" format, and is the format created by the `keytool` command-line utility. This tool is included in the JDK.

Each entry in a keystore is identified by an alias string to avoid issues related to the case sensitivity of aliases, it is not recommended to use aliases that differ only in case.

To setup SAML support in Product 360 we will need to start with creating the keystore's for the different X509 certificates which will be needed for transport and message level security. If there is no SSL connection used within your Product 360 yet, you will need to setup an initial keystore.

Create new certificate and keystore

To create a new JKS keystore from scratch, containing a single self-signed Certificate, execute the following from a terminal command line:

Create new certificate and keystore

```
keytool -genkey -alias [your alias] -keyalg RSA -keystore c:\path\to\your\desired\.keystore -keysize 2048
```

This command will create a new file under the specified (`-keystore` parameter) location. You will also need to reflect this new location in the Product 360 `NetworkConfig.xml` file in the `<keystore>` element.

After executing this command, you will first be prompted for the keystore password. You will also need to specify the custom password in the `NetworkConfig.xml` file, as described later.

Next, you will be prompted for general information about this Certificate, such as company, contact name, and so on. This information will be displayed to users who attempt to access a secure page in your application, so make sure that the information provided here matches what they will expect.

Finally, you will be prompted for the *key password*, which is the password specifically for this Certificate (as opposed to any other Certificates stored in the same keystore file). The key password as well as the specified alias (`-alias` parameter) you need to specify in the appropriate use case (HTTPS, SAML signing, SAML encryption) and their configuration files.

If everything was successful, you now have a keystore file with a Certificate that can be used by your Product 360 server.

Import existing certificate into keystore

If you already have a Certificate you can import it into your local keystore. First of all you have to import a so called Chain Certificate or Root Certificate into your keystore. After that you can proceed with importing your Certificate

Download a Chain Certificate from the Certificate Authority you obtained the Certificate from.

- For Verisign.com commercial certificates go to: <http://www.verisign.com/support/install/intermediate.html>
- For Verisign.com trial certificates go to: http://www.verisign.com/support/verisign-intermediate-ca/Trial_Secure_Server_Root/index.html
- For Trustcenter.de go to: <http://www.trustcenter.de/certservices/cacerts/en/en.htm#server>
- For Thawte.com go to: <http://www.thawte.com/certs/trustmap.html>

Import the Chain Certificate into your keystore

Import the Chain Certificate into your keystore

```
keytool -import -alias root -keystore c:\path\to\your\desired\.keystore -trustcacerts -file c:\path\to\your\trustcacertFileName
```

Finally you can import the CA certificate

Import the CA certificate

```
keytool -import -alias https -keystore c:\path\to\your\desired\.keystore -file c:\path\to\your\certificateFileName
```

Export existing certificates public keys for metadata usage

For the SAML metadata's you will need the public keys in a readable format, to get them execute the following commands from command line:

Export existing certificates

```
keytool -export -file c:\mycertificate.cert -alias samlEncryptionCert -keystore c:\path\to\your\desired\.keystore
```

Convert certificate to readable format

```
keytool -printcert -rfc -file c:\mycertificate.cert > c:\mycertificate.txt
```

Enabling HTTPS

In the NetworkConfig.xml add a keystore tag for each node you want to enable https/SAML:

keyStore configuration in NetworkConfig.xml

```
<keyStore>
  <file>c:/users/myUser/.keystore</file>
  <password>secret</password>
</keyStore>
```

To enable https, change the web tag as follows:

https configuration in NetworkConfig.xml

```
<web useHttps="true">
  <http port="1512" />
  <https port="8443" keyPassword="secret" alias="https" />
</web>
```

By specifying an alias, you refer to a certificate stored in the keystore beforehand. The keyPassword is the password you set while importing or creating the certificate.

4.16.3 Configuring SAML for Product 360

Adding SAML relevant configuration files (SamlConfig.xml and IdP metadata)

i The current SAML implementation requires the IdP to deliver the username (without domain or email extension) in the Name_ID attribute.

After having https enabled and a keystore configured, the SamlConfig.xml as well as metadata for the IdP have to be configured.

SAMLConfig.xml

In the configuration folder, there is a template for the SamlConfig.xml. Adapt it to fit to your needs, add the alias and password of your key and enable SAML:

If you want to use different keys for signing and encryption, you have to create multiple keys in the keystore. The following assumes the use of the same data for both actions.

SamlConfig.xml

```
<samlConfig xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="SamlConfig.xsd">
  <active>false</active>
  <logoutUrl>https://idpserver/login.html</logoutUrl>
  <defaultUserGroup>defaultGroup</defaultUserGroup>
  <idpMetadata>
    <metadataLocation forceAuthRequestsSigned="false" disregardSslCertificate="false">saml/idp-metadata.xml</
metadataLocation>
  </idpMetadata>
  <spMetadata>
    <assertionConsumerServiceLocation>https://pim.informatica.com:8443/pim/webaccess</assertionConsumerServiceLocation>
    <signingKey password="secret" alias="localhost"/>
    <encryptionKey password="secret" alias="localhost"/>
    <entityId>spEntityID</entityId>
    <wantAssertionsSigned>true</wantAssertionsSigned>
  </spMetadata>
</samlConfig>
```

Active

Defines whether SAML shall be used to initiate automated SAML Single Sign On if the user is not logged in yet.

Type	Required	Default
Boolean	yes	false

LogoutUrl

Defines the URL to which the user will be redirected after logout. Most typically this is an URL where a user may login to the application IdP initiated.

In case the element does not exist or the value is empty, the user is redirected to the default Product 360 login page.

Type	Required	Default
String or URL	no	Product 360 login page

DefaultUserGroup

When a user has been authenticated via SAML and there is no matching user with the same name in Product 360 it will be created on the fly and assigned to a default user group which can be provided here.
A matching user group with this name must exist in Product 360.

Type	Required	Default
String	no	-


SpMetadata

Required element defining all Service Provider relevant settings.

Sub element/Attribute	Type	Required	Default	Description
entityId	String	yes	-	An entity ID is a globally unique name for a SAML entity, either an Identity Provider (IdP) or a Service Provider (SP). The entityId defined will be used for communication between IdP and Sp.
assertionConsumersServiceLocation	URL	yes	-	Describes the endpoint to which SAML responses are to be sent by the IdP.
signingKey	-	yes	-	The signing key is used to establish a trusted handshake between SP and IdP (authentication).
alias	String	yes	-	Alias for the key used for signing.
password	String	yes	-	Password for accessing the key defined by the alias.
encryptionKey	String	yes	-	The encryption key is used to decrypt data received by IdP (data was encrypted by the SPs corresponding public key).
alias	String	yes	-	Alias for the key used for signing.
password	String	yes	-	Password for accessing the key defined by the alias.
wantAssertionsSigned	Boolean	yes	true	If you want the IdP to sign Assertions set this flag to true. As signing of assertions is the recommended option, the default value is true.

IdpMetadata

Required element defining all Identity Provider relevant settings.

Sub element / Attribute	Type	Required	Default	Description
metadataLocation	URL or relative path in Product 360 configuration folder	yes	saml/idp-metadata.xml	<p>Provides information about the IdP. The element value itself defines the location of the metadata file. Currently two types of locations are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• URL based (http and https), e.g. "https://idpserver/metadata/idp-metadata.xml" or "http://idpserver/metadata/idp-metadata.xml".• If neither a URL with http or https is provided, it is assumed that the file is located relatively to the server configuration folder. e.g. "saml/idp-metadata.xml" would be valid. <div><p> Please note that if a URL with https is used and "disregardSslCertificate" is set to false, you have to ensure that the certificate presented by the IdP to access the metadata is trusted by Product 360. This is done by adding the certificate to the Product 360 keystore (see above how to add trusted certificates).</p></div>
disregardSslCertificate	Boolean	no	false	<p>Indicating whether the servers SSL certificate should always be accepted regardless of whether it is valid.</p> <p>This flag is only relevant if the element value contains a https URL.</p>
forceAuthRequestsSigned	Boolean	no	-	<p>You can force Product 360 to add a signature to the AuthRequest by setting this flag to true.</p>

Service Provider Metadata

When your server is started successfully with SAML set to active, the SP metadata can be fetched directly at a URL provided by Product 360.

 <https://pim.informatica.com:8443/pim/saml/metadata>

This URL can be referenced by your IdP for getting current information about the Product 360 configuration, certificates etc.

As an alternative you can generate your metadata file with the following online tool:

https://www.samltool.com/sp_metadata.php

Identity Provider Metadata

The IdP metadata usually can be received over an URL provided by the IdP, which already contains all necessary information you need to know about your IdP. This includes certification information as well as endpoints etc. Of course the IdP metadata can also be retrieved from a configuration folder. A template metadata file "idp-metadata.xml" is contained in the subfolder saml of the Product 360 configuration folder.

The following URL fragments show the metadata URL patterns for the two IdP implementations of Microsoft and Shibboleth:

Microsoft AD FS

```
https://idpserver/FederationMetadata/2007-06/FederationMetadata.xml
```

Shibboleth

```
https://idpserver/idp/shibboleth
```

OpenAM

```
http://openamserver/openam/saml2/jsp/exportmetadata.jsp?entityid=entityID
```

Place your idp-metadata.xml into the subfolder saml of the Product 360 configuration folder or the defined location within your SamlConfig.xml.

In case your IdP does not provide any metadata you need to generate the idp-metadata.xml file from a template located in within the Product 360 configuration folder. The relevant information can alternatively be generated with the help of https://www.samltool.com/idp_metadata.php.

Within the metadata file you need to provide the URL to your IdPs SingleSignOnService location which accepts POST requests. (Example URL schema matches Shibboleth IdP)

Sample idp-metadata.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<md:EntityDescriptor xmlns:md="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:metadata"
  entityID="idpEntityID">
  <md:IDPSSODescriptor WantAuthnRequestsSigned="false"
    protocolSupportEnumeration="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:protocol">
    <md:SingleSignOnService
      Binding="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:bindings:HTTP-POST"
      Location="https://idpserver/idp/profile/SAML2/POST/SSO" />
    </md:IDPSSODescriptor>
  </md:EntityDescriptor>
```

Information Security

Signing of AuthRequest (SP -> IdP)

If your IdP requires signed AuthRequest you need to enable this within Product 360. This can be done by setting the WantAuthRequestsSigned parameter within the idp-metadata.xml in the configuration folder to true.

Enable signing of SAML request

```
<md:IDPSSODescriptor WantAuthnRequestsSigned="true" ...>
```



If you use the URL based metadata provider for referencing the IdP metadata, you can force your Product 360 to add a signature to the AuthRequest by adding the forceAuthRequestsSigned flag to true.

While the SAML metadata specification does not require the WantAuthRequestSigned parameter within the IDPSSODescriptor some IdP Implementations might not set it explicitly, but nevertheless require a signature.

Force Signed Auth Requests in SamlConfig.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<samlConfig xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="SamlConfig.xsd">
  ...
  <idpMetadata>
    <metadataLocation forceAuthRequestsSigned="true">https://idpserver/metadata/idp-metadata.xml</metadataLocation>
  </idpMetadata>
  ...
</samlConfig>
```

Additionally you need to provide an X509 certificate in your keystore and refer to it over the alias and password attribute in the <signingKey> element within the spMetadata section of your SamlConfig.xml

Signing of SAML Assertions (IdP -> SP)

The SAML metadata specification defines an parameter for requesting an IdP to sign the SAML Assertions this might not be enough for all IdPs and you might need to enable the signing of SAML assertions over another way, but to enable Product 360 to require signature validation on assertion level you need to set the WantAssertionsSigned parameter in SamlConfig.xml within you Product 360 configuration folder to true.

Enable signing of SAML response

```
<samlConfig xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="SamlConfig.xsd">
  ...
  <spMetadata>
    ...
    <wantAssertionsSigned>true</wantAssertionsSigned>
    ...
  </spMetadata>
</samlConfig>
```

The signature of the assertion will be verified by Product 360 against the public key of the X509 certificate within your idp-metadata.xml

Signing public key in idp-metadata.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<md:EntityDescriptor xmlns:md="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:metadata"
  entityID="idpEntityID">
```

```

<md:IDPSSODescriptor WantAuthnRequestsSigned="false"
  protocolSupportEnumeration="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:protocol">
  ...
  <md:KeyDescriptor use="signing">
    <ds:KeyInfo xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
      <ds:X509Data>
        <ds:X509Certificate>MIIDZzCCAk+gAwIBAgIEFuHJDDANBgqhkiG9w0BAQsFADBkMQswCQYDVQQGEWJE
RTEQMA4GA1UECBMHR2VybwFueTENMASGA1UEBxMEU3RndDERMA8GA1UEChMIV2lu
ZG93czcxDTALBgNVBAsTBFBPSU0xEjAQBgNVBAMTCWxvY2FsaG9zdDAeFw0xNTEw
MDIxMjA2NDFaFw0xNjA5MjYxMjA2NDFaMGQxCzAJBgNVBAYTAkRFRMAwDgYDVQQQI
...
      </ds:X509Certificate>
    </ds:X509Data>
  </ds:KeyInfo>
</md:KeyDescriptor>
  ...
</md:IDPSSODescriptor>
</md:EntityDescriptor>

```

Encryption of SAML Assertions (IdP -> SP)

JCE issues with strong cryptographic algorithms

As already described in the general Server Installation section, due to import control restrictions of some countries, the version of the JCE policy files that are bundled in the Java Runtime Environment, or JRE(TM) 8 environment allow "strong", but limited cryptography is used per default. This means if your IdP uses a strong cryptographic algorithm like AES-256 you will need to change the configuration in file <PIM ROOT>\server\jre\lib\security\java.security.

Enable the property 'crypto.policy=unlimited' to activate the unlimited cryptographic algorithms. Otherwise you will run into errors during encryption/decryption in Product 360, saying you're using an illegal key size.

Also after update to newest Hotfix the Java JCE 'java.security' file must be replaced in corresponding jre\lib\security folders of all Product 360 components.

If your IdP supports assertion level encryption and the encryption is active, then you must provide your encryption public key X509 certificate within the metadata you provide to your IdP.

The IdP will use this public key to encrypt the SAML assertion and only the owner of the corresponding private key can encrypted the assertion. The best way of doing this is to get the metadata provided by Product 360 (see above).

This metadata already includes all certificates the IdP needs to know.

If Product 360 receives an encrypted assertion it will try to decrypted the assertion with the configured private key which is referenced by the <encryptionKey> in the SamlConfig.xml.

encryptionKey in SamlConfig.xml

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<samlConfig xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="SamlConfig.xsd">
  ...
  <encryptionKey password="secret" alias="encryption"/>
  ...
</samlConfig>

```


Usage of SAML with Product 360 multi-server and load balancer

For the usage of SAML in combination with a load balancer on a multi-server setup, there are some additional settings that have to be made on the load balancer and SAML configuration

Configuration of the load balancer

Additionally to the default load balancing scenario (see [Web Configuration](#)), the module **mod_rewrite** has to be enabled.

For the usage of SSL (https) in your load balancer (Apache), stick to the official Apache documentation. The example below defines a virtual host supporting SSL and the additional directives necessary for SAML support.

Example virtual host configuration

```
Listen 443
<VirtualHost *:443>
    ServerName loadBalancer
    SSLEngine on
    SSLCertificateFile "D:/certs/cert.pem"
    SSLCertificateKeyFile "D:/certs/pk.pem"
    SSLProxyEngine On
    SSLProxyVerify none #optional for disabling certificate validation
    SSLProxyCheckPeerCN off #optional
    SSLProxyCheckPeerName off #optional
    ProxyPreserveHost On

    Header add Set-Cookie "ROUTEID_HPMW=.{BALANCER_WORKER_ROUTE}e; path=/" env=BALANCER_ROUTE_CHANGED
    <Proxy balancer://hpmwcluster>
        BalancerMember https://server1:8443 route=1
        BalancerMember https://server2:8443 route=2
        ProxySet stickysession=ROUTEID_HPMW
    </Proxy>
    ProxyPass /pim balancer://hpmwcluster/pim
    ProxyPassReverse /pim balancer://hpmwcluster/pim

    RewriteEngine on
    RewriteCond %{REMOTE_HOST} =server1 [OR]
    RewriteCond %{REMOTE_HOST} =server2
    RewriteRule    "^/pim/(.+)" "https://loadBalancer/pim/$1" # optional [R,L]

</VirtualHost>
```

The most important additional directives to be configured are listed below:

Directive	Explanation
SSLProxyEngine On	Support SSL proxy
ProxyPreserveHost On	Preserve host name on proxy requests (required for successful validation of SAML requests/responses)
RewriteEngine on	Rewrite URLs so User always sees the load balancer URL

Directive	Explanation
<pre> RewriteCond %{REMOTE_HOST} =server1 [OR] RewriteCond %{REMOTE_HOST} =server2 RewriteRule "^/pim/(.+)" "https://loadBalancer/pim/ \$1" </pre>	Rewrite rules and conditions, a condition for each member of the Product 360 cluster is required

IdP configuration

On IdP side, it is necessary to have the load balancer set as assertion consumer service of your IdP:

If you fetch the SP metadata by the URL provided by Product 360, as recommended, adjust the **assertionConsumerServiceLocation** in the SamlConfig.xml to point to your load balancer URL on which you want to reach the Product 360 application e.g. <https://loadBalancer/pim/webaccess>

Automatic User creation on successful authentication

When the user authentication is successful, but the authenticated user does not exist yet, a new user will be created with the credential information provided by the SAML response.

The user will be created as external user with the unique user name from the assertion subject element "NameID". The created user will be assigned to the user group defined in the xml element defaultUserGroup of the SamlConfig.xml.

The user creation also takes information from the Assertions in the SAML Authentication Response. For uniquely identifying an attribute by its name the conventions in the Identity Selector Interoperability Profile V1.5 specifications are used. The following attributes will be taken from the one assertion containing the information about the NameID of the user:

Value of element attribute "name" in SAML Attribute	Mapped to User data	Mandatory	Comment
http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/givenname	Given name	No	An Attribute may contain a list of values. Because of that all first name values are concatenated with a space as separator. E.g. the first name values {"John", "Karl"} will be mapped to "John Karl".
http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/surname	Name	No	An Attribute may contain a list of values. Because of that all last name values are concatenated with a space as separator. E.g. the last name values {"Earl", "Doe"} will be mapped to "Earl Doe".
http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/emailaddress	E-mail	No	An Attribute may contain a list of values. In case of email values only the first value will be considered. E.g. the email values {"john@company.com", "jdoe@company.com"} are mapped to "john@company.com".



In case there is also a LDAP configuration in place the user will be synchronized with the data stored in the LDAP. This includes group memberships and requires that the user can be found via the same user name in LDAP. Please see the [LDAP Configuration](#) for details.

Internal Users

In a SSO scenario it still might be desirable to bypass the automatic authentication flow, e.g. for service users or for troubleshooting issues. A mixed setup with external users authenticated via SAML and internal users is possible. Please run the following steps to authenticate with the credentials of an internal user (User authentication mode must be set to "internal"):

- In the Rich Client, hold the CTRL and SHIFT key during startup to prevent initiation of the SSO flow. A prompt asking for username and password will appear instead.
- For web, enter the url /pim/login to get access to the login page.

4.16.4 Logging

To identify problems in your SAML configuration you are able to activate a more detailed logging of the security components. To do so add the following log4j categories to the central log4j.xml within your Product 360's configuration folder.

Security Logging within log4j.xml

```
<category name="com.heiler.ppm.saml">
  <priority value="TRACE"/>
</category>

<category name="com.heiler.ppm.web.saml">
  <priority value="TRACE"/>
</category>
```

5 Desktop Client Configuration

5.1 OSGI Configuration Area

The OSGI Configuration area is a directory used by OSGI to store bundle-related files at runtime (f.e. the swt-win32-...dll). Per default for Product 360 Desktop it is configured to the directory "%USERPROFILE%/AppData/Roaming/Informatica **PIM Desktop**". The current windows user should always have write access to this directory. If in any case the windows user does not have write access to this directory, it should be changed to a writable directory by changing the value of the VM-Argument **-Dosgi.configuration.area** in the file **pim-desktop.cmd** and **pim-desktop-debug.cmd**.

5.2 Server Connection Configuration

The *ServerConnection.xml* file in the client's configuration folder can be used for specifying low-level communication protocol settings as well as the initial server's connection info (host + port). This guarantees that Product 360 Desktop instances are able to connect automatically to the correct server when deployed and started for the first time. After the start of the client, the client remembers all available servers and those will be used to connect if the configured initial server is not available. This list of servers can also be configured manually in the *ServerConnection.xml* if required. Each time a client connects successfully to a Product 360 server, the connection info of this server is updated in the *ServerConnection.xml* file, so when manually choosing a different server, next time the new settings are used.

The file looks like the following:

ServerConnection.xml Example

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<communication connectTimeout="0" tcpNoDelay="true"
  keepAlive="true" defaultRequestTimeout="300000">
  <thread-pool maxCoreThreads="5" />
  <initial-server host="localhost" port="1701" />
  <servers host="localhost" port="1701" connectTimeout="0" tcpNoDelay="true" keepAlive="true"/>
  <servers host="localhost" port="1702" connectTimeout="0" tcpNoDelay="true" keepAlive="true"/>
</communication>
```

The *ServerConnection.xml* file can contain the following XML elements and attributes:

Element/ Attribute	Description	Example/ Default
communication	Root element of the server connection.	
defaultRequestTimeout	Timeout in milliseconds for requests in communication framework	300000
connectTimeout	The timeout in milliseconds when connecting to the host. A value of 0 is interpreted as an infinite timeout. The connection will then block until established or an error occurs.	0
tcpNoDelay	Disables (= true!) resp enables (= false) the so-called Nagle's algorithm	true
keepAlive	Causes a packet (called a "keepalive probe") to be sent to the connected system if a long time (by default, more than 2 hours) passes with no other data being sent or received. This packet is designed to provoke an ACK response from the peer.	true
useTLS	true in case the communication between desktop client and server should be encrypted. In case the server uses a self-signed certificate, the trust-store element must be defined!	false
thread-pool	Settings for communication framework's thread pool	
maxQueueSize	Maximum size of the request/event processing queue. New processing threads will be created only when the queue is full	
maxCoreThreads	The maximum number of core threads that are processing request/events. Roughly speaking this is a hint for the thread scheduling strategy which denotes expected number of requests/events to be concurrently processed in a 'normal' operation mode. Scheduling strategy will tend to keep this number of threads in a ready-to-run state. Consider <code>maxQueueSize</code> together with this parameter. For more details concerning scheduling algorithm consult <code>Java SDK ThreadPoolExecutor</code>	
maxThreads	The maximum number of threads that are processing request/events. This is a hard limit (in comparison with <code>maxCoreThreads</code>). If this value is reached, server will start rejecting requests	

keepAliveTime	Time in milliseconds that the thread scheduling strategy will wait, before reducing number of idle threads down to <code>maxCoreThreads</code> . This value protects from the situations when average number of required threads is higher than <code>maxCoreThreads</code> and scheduling strategy is constantly recreating threads, because it tries to reduce number of threads down to <code>maxCoreThreads</code>	
doStartAllCoreThreads	Flag value which instructs node to start all core threads on initialization. Usually this value should not be changed from its defaults (which is <code>false</code>). The reason to set this value to <code>true</code> could be the situation when all clients connect to the server together during a short period of time.	
initial-server	Connection settings to the initial application server	
host	Hostname of any application server. In case of multi-server deployment this can be just any server of the cluster. The actual server the client connects to will be determined from this server.	
port	The port of the Product 360 application on the host	1712
trust-store		
file	<p>Path to the file which contains the certificates for the SSL/TLS encrypted communication. The path might be relative to the configuration directory of the server.</p> <p>For example: In case the server application is installed here: <code>C:/Informatica/Product360/server</code> the configuration folder would be <code>C:/Informatica/Product360/server/configuration/HPM</code>. In case you set the file element to <code>certificates\keystore.jks</code> it is expected to be at <code>C:/Informatica/Product360/server/configuration/HPM/certificates/keystore.jks</code>.</p> <p>Alternatively you can define an absolute path.</p> <p>Please note that this file is a keystore file, but it is used as trust store. That means, any certificate in this file will be trusted just like any regular, official certificate. This also means that the trust store element is only needed in case self-signed certificates are used for the communication. Certificates from a trust authority are trusted by default.</p> <p><i>It is always recommended to use trusted certificates and not self-signed ones.</i></p>	
password	The password for the keystore file	

5.3 General Preferences

The Product 360 Desktop preferences dialog contains several settings, which affect the common appearance and layout of the Product 360 Desktop application. The most of this preferences have default values, which can be maintain in the `plugin_customization.ini` file (on the client). In the following are listed the most important general preferences with the corresponding preference keys which can be used to customize the default values of these preferences.



If you don't know the preference key and the according possible values, you can find your current client settings in `<PathToClientWorkspace>client\.metadata\plugins\org.eclipse.core.runtime\.settings\<plugin_name>.prefs`

5.3.1 Load Balancing

Disable Load Balancing

The load balancing of the desktop client can be disabled. This might be required in some customer scenarios in which the also the desktop client load balancing should be handled by an external load balancer.

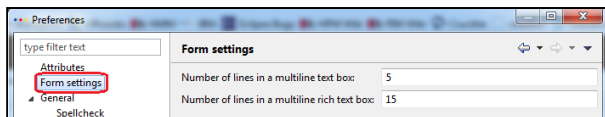
To disable the desktop client load balancing add the following line to the `plugin_customization.ini` of the **client**: `com.heiler.ppm.communication.ui/clientLoadBalancingEnabled = false`

In this case the client will think that there is only the server which is configured in the `ServerConnection.xml` file of the client.

Always open Server Selection Dialog

In case the `com.heiler.ppm.communication.ui/alwaysOpenServerSelectionDialog` preference in the `plugin_customization.ini` of the **client** is set to true, the server selection dialog during startup of the desktop client will always open. In case this preference is missing or set to false, the dialog only opens in case the user presses `ctrl` or `shift` during startup.

5.3.2 Form settings



The form settings affects the layout of the form views. On this preference page the user can specify the height of the text boxes.

Number of lines in a multiline text box

Specifies the height of a multiline text box in a form view (e.g. the "Group name" field of the *Article* entity).

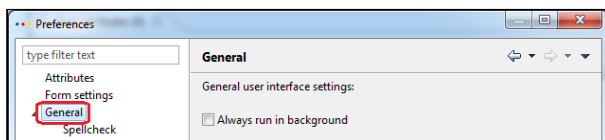
The preference key for the `plugin_customization.ini`: **com.heiler.ppm.std.ui/form.rows.multiline** (the default value is 5)

Number of lines in a multiline rich text box

Specifies the height of a rich text box in a form view (e.g. the "Long description" field of the *Article* entity).

The preference key for the `plugin_customization.ini`: **com.heiler.ppm.std.ui/form.rows.multiline.richtext** (the default value is 15)

5.3.3 General

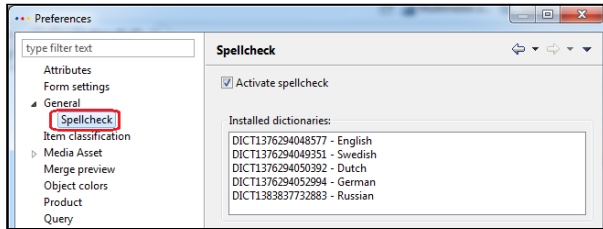


Always run in background

Determines if the showing of the progress dialog should be suppressed during a long running operation or an eclipse job is running.

The preference key for the `plugin_customization.ini`: **org.eclipse.ui/RUN_IN_BACKGROUND** (the default value is **false**)

5.3.4 Spellcheck



Activate spellcheck

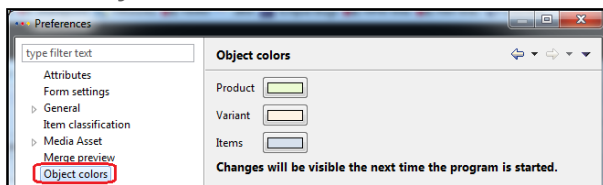
Determines if the spellchecking is enabled

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini*: **com.heiler.ppm.spelling.ui/spellingEnabled** (the default value is **true**)

Installed dictionaries

In this list all dictionaries are showing which are currently installed on the server. This is for displaying only and has no function.

5.3.5 Object colors



Product

Specifies the object color for the entity *Product* used for the toolbar background for all views which are showing product-specific data.

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini* (on the server!): **com.heiler.ppm.std.ui/header.background.color.Product2G** (the default value is **235,251,210**)

Variant

Specifies the object color for the entity *Variant* used for the toolbar background for all views which are showing variant-specific data.

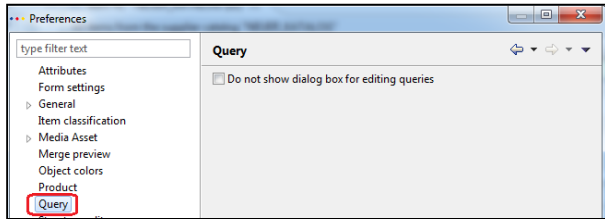
The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini* (on the server!): **com.heiler.ppm.std.ui/header.background.color.Variant** (the default value is **255,244,229**)

Item

Specifies the object color for the entity *Article* used for the toolbar background for all views which are showing item-specific data.

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini* (on the server!): **com.heiler.ppm.std.ui/header.background.color.Article** (the default value is **215,225,237**)

5.3.6 Query

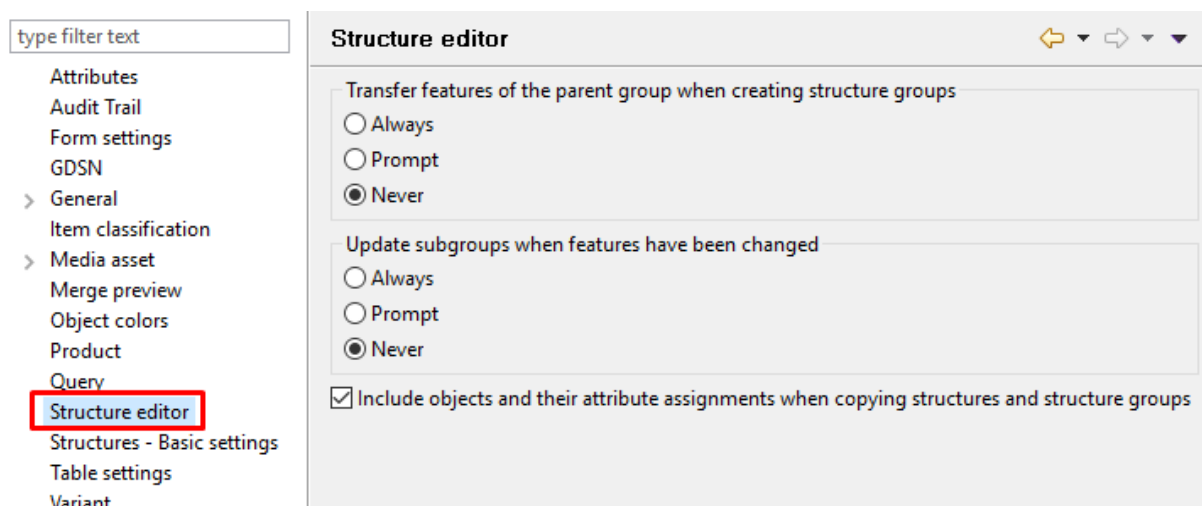


Do not show dialog box for editing queries

Determines if the showing of the "edit query" dialog should be suppressed if the user executes a report query (e.g. using the catalog popup menu)

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini*: **com.heiler.ppm.entity.ui/edit.query.dialog.hide** (the default value is **false**)

5.3.7 Structure editor



The structure editor settings specify the general behavior of the structure editor.

Transfer feature of the parent group when creating structure groups

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini*: **com.heiler.ppm.structure.ui/feature_transfer** with the options

- feature_transfer_mode_always
- feature_transfer_mode_ask
- feature_transfer_mode_never (default)

Update subgroups when features have been changed

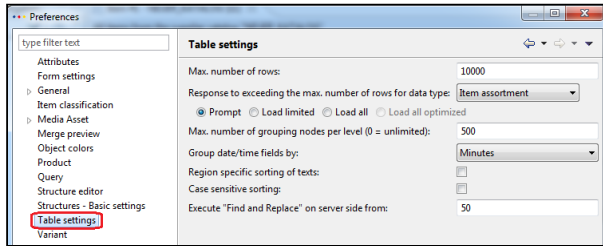
The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini*: **com.heiler.ppm.structure.ui/feature_update** with the options

- feature_update_mode_always
- feature_update_mode_ask
- feature_update_mode_never (default)

Include objects and their attribute assignments when copying structures and structure groups

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini*: **com.heiler.ppm.structure.ui/structuregroup_copy_with_mapping** with the options 'true' (default) and 'false'.

5.3.8 Table settings



The table settings affects the layout of the table views. On this preference page the user can specify several setting for the tables.

Max. number of rows

Specifies the maximum amount of rows to be displayed in tables. This value is also the threshold to provide so-called "virtual table" with optimized, server-based sorting, filtering etc.

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini*: **com.heiler.ppm.std.ui/table.max-rows** (the default value is **10,000**)

Max. number of grouping nodes per level

Specifies the maximum amount of table grouping nodes per level.

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini*: **com.heiler.ppm.std.ui/table.max-grouping-nodes** (the default value is **500**)

Group date/time fields by

Specifies the pattern which is used for the grouping of date-/time-fields.

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini*: **com.heiler.ppm.std.ui/table.date-fields-group-by** (the default value is **yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm** - grouping by minutes).

Other possible values: **yyyy-MM-dd HH** - grouping by hours, **yyyy-MM-dd** - grouping by days, **yyyy-MM** - grouping by months and **yyyy** - grouping by years.

Region specific sorting of texts

Specifies whether to use locale-sensitive (= **"true"**) resp. locale-insensitive (= **"false"**) string comparison in table sorting.

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini*: **com.heiler.ppm.std.ui/table.sort.locale-sensitive** (the default value is **false**)

Case sensitive sorting

Specifies whether to use case-sensitive (= **"true"**) resp. case-insensitive (= **"false"**) string comparison in table sorting.

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini*: **com.heiler.ppm.std.ui/table.sort.case-sensitive** (the default value is **false**)

Execute "Find and Replace" on server side from

Specifies the minimum amount of rows which are needed for performing a server-side job for a "Find&Replace" operation

The preference key for the *plugin_customization.ini*: **com.heiler.ppm.std.ui/findreplace.serversidejob-rows** (the default value is **50**)

6 Web Configuration

6.1 Activate Product 360 - Web Permissions & Interface Visibility

Product 360 - Web contributes some action rights and interface visibility elements which allow customization of the Web User Interface. To change these permissions, open the Product 360 - Desktop Organization perspective. A couple of web-specific actions rights are shown in the group "Web permissions" in the Action Rights View.

Grouping	Allo...	Permission	Description	Rights group
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Help (Web)	User is able to use the help in PIM Web	Web Permissions
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Classify objects (Web)	General right to classify objects in PIM Web	Web Permissions
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Log in (Web)	User is able to login through the PIM Web	Web Permissions
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Change password (Web)	User is able to change his own password in PIM Web	Web Permissions
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Activate spell check (Web)	Allows the usage of dictionaries for spell checking in PIM Web	Web Permissions


Even more configuration options are available on the Interface Visibility Tab. Please note that all web specific elements are only shown after the Web application was loaded at least once in the Browser.




The shown elements are dynamic and depend on the concrete configuration of the system. Hence new list definition contributions can be assigned to different user groups on the fly.

Action rights (5/266) Interface visibility (7/214) Object rights (system) Field rights (948) Qualified field rights (6)				
Grouping	Allowed	Name	Category	Type
Type				
Informatica PIM Perspective (29)				
Informatica PIM View (129)				
PIM Web Context (7)				
PIM Web List Definition (13)				
PIM Web Tab (36)				
	1	Context visibility: Catalogs (PIM Web)	Context	PIM Web Context
	2	Context visibility: Search (PIM Web)	Context	PIM Web Context
	3	Context visibility: Context visibility: Entire Context selection area (PIM Web)	Context	PIM Web Context
	4	Context visibility: Queries (PIM Web)	Context	PIM Web Context
	5	Context visibility: Tasks (PIM Web)	Context	PIM Web Context
	6	Context visibility: Multimedia attachments (PIM Web)	Context	PIM Web Context
	7	Context visibility: Structure groups in "{0}" structure (PIM Web)	Context	PIM Web Context

6.2 Product 360 - Web Specific Configuration



All configuration for Product 360 - Web is done in **<PIM_SERVER_INSTALLATION_ROOT>/server/configuration/HPM/webfrontend.properties**. This is a complete list of all configuration parameters:

General settings	
web.client.default.language  deprecated with 8.0.5	Default language, effects login page only, other things are shown in selected on login page language or as configured on form. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • German = deu • English = eng • Spanish = esl • Finnish = fin • French = fra • Italian = ita • Dutch = dut • Swedish = swe • Portuguese = por Default: eng



<p>web.client.default.locale</p> <p> since 8.0.03.01</p>	<p>Default locale, effects login page only, other things are shown in selected on login page language or as configured on form.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • German = de_DE • English (American) = en_US • Spanish = es_ES • Finnish = fi_FI • French = fr_FR • Italian = it_IT • Dutch = nl_NL • Swedish = sv_SE • Portuguese (Brazilian) = pt_BR • English (British) = en_GB <p>Default: en_US</p>
<p>web.client.available.locales</p> <p> since 8.0.03.01</p>	<p>List of all available locales for login form. Must be a subset of language enum values in HPM. Separated by comma.</p> <p>Default value for this setting is a list of all languages where an official i18n package is available for.</p> <p>Default: de_DE,en_US,fr_FR,ru_RU,nl_NL,sv_SE,fi_FI,es_ES,no_NO,pt_BR,ja_JP,zh_CN,ko_KR,it_IT</p>
<p>web.client.theme</p>	<p>Theme affects the application appearance.</p> <p>Default: symphony</p>
<p>web.client.httpSession.timeout</p>	<p>Session time-out in seconds.</p> <p>Default (28800 seconds equals 8 hours): 28800</p>
<p>web.client.xframeoptions</p> <p> since 8.0.03.02</p>	<p>If set, an X-Frame-Options response header will be set in the main page http response to prevent the application being embedded in other sites for security reasons. Please note, that this will break catalog editor functionality in Supplier Portal and Supplier 360.</p> <p>Details: https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7034</p> <p>Supported values: DENY, SAMEORIGIN, ALLOW-FROM</p> <p>Default: <empty></p>

web.client.detailform.inputs.limit	<p>Maximum number of inputs at detail form displayed by default. If inputs count limit will be reached, user will see "More (x)" button.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>30</p>
web.client.filter.minimum.length	<p>Minimum length for text field used for filtering list views. Value has to be ≥ 0. Note that empty input (length=0) is always allowed as this is used to reset the filter to show all entries. Therefore setting minimum length to 1 does not have any impact.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>1</p>
web.client.text.filter.timeout	<p>Timeout for text filters. It set a time for response between entered letter and search results. Recommended value between 200-1000 ms.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>200</p>
web.client.clone.referencetype.Article web.client.clone.referencetype.Variant web.client.clone.referencetype.Product2G	<p>Reference type between cloned element and original. Value is based on repository Enum.ArticleReferenceType keys.</p> <p>WARN:Check your repository for valid keys! Example values from standard repository: sparepart=1,similar=2,followup=3,mandatory=4,select=5,accessories=6,others=7,diff_or derunit=8,consists_of=9,cross_selling=10,up-selling=11;</p> <p>if value is empty or doesn't exist at Enum, reference will not be created.</p> <p>for new custom entities just add new property : prefix 'web.client.clone.referencetype.' + entity identifier</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>""</p>
web.definition.dir	<p>Relative path to web definitions XML files, starting from configuration directory. By default points to configuration/server/webdefinitions</p> <p>It can be also configured with absolute path. If path doesn't start with /, it is considered as absolute.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>/webdefinitions</p>
web.client.default.fetch.size  since 8.0.03.01	<p>Default number of rows that are fetched in master list views. Smaller numbers result in slightly faster loading times, however, multiple db queries might be necessary. Value should be a bit larger than the number of rows that are visible on the screen.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>200</p>

Media Asset Configuration	
web.client.mediaasset.servlet.path	<p>Media asset bridge servlet (root path)..</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>/pim/mediaasset</p>
web.client.mediaasset.preferred.quality	<p>Preferred quality for thumbnails at mediaasset viewer.</p> <p>HLR Available values: web, lowres, highres [doc,html,printxml,pdf, ...]</p> <p>Product 360 - Media Manager Available values: 1, originalimage.</p> <p>Please clarify available quality values from Product 360 - Media Manager system administrator</p> <p>Default</p> <p>web</p>
web.client.mediaasset.thumbnail.detail.panel.type	<p>Detail form top image type from available mediaasset.</p> <p>Available values: normal, thumbnail, data_sheet, logo, others, unknown [, ...]</p> <p>Default</p> <p>normal</p>
web.client.mediaasset.list.thumbnail.small	<p>Documents list view thumbnails quality mapping for small images.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>small</p>
web.client.mediaasset.list.thumbnail.normal	<p>Documents list view thumbnails quality mapping for standard images.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>normal</p>
web.client.mediaasset.list.thumbnail.big	<p>Documents list view thumbnails quality mapping for large images.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>big</p>
web.client.mediaasset.list.page.size	<p>Number of multimedia document that are display on a single page.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>25</p>
Product 360 - Supplier Portal Integration	

web.client.hsx.supplier.login	<p>Login name of Product Manager user that is used for supplier editor. Only needed for Product 360 - Supplier Portal integration.</p> <p>Default: supplier</p>
web.client.hsx.supplier.password	<p>Login password of Product Manager user that is used for supplier editor. Only needed for Product 360 - Supplier Portal integration.</p> <p>Default: supplier</p> <div>  If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual. </div>
web.client.hsx.readonly.supplier.login	<p>Login name of Product Manager user that is used for supplier read-only view. Only needed for Product 360 - Supplier Portal integration.</p> <p>Default: readonlysupplier</p>
web.client.hsx.readonly.supplier.password	<p>Login password of Product Manager user that is used for supplier read-only view. Only needed for Product 360 - Supplier Portal integration.</p> <p>Default: readonlysupplier</p> <div>  If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual. </div>
Product 360 - Web Search Integration	
web.client.hps.max.display.facet	<p>Maximum number of displayed search facets.</p> <p>Default: 5</p>
Export Configuration	

web.client.export.max.selection	<p>Maximum number of records that can be exported from the Web UI. Export will be disabled when selection count exceeds this number. Use -1 to disable this limitation.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>200</p>
Various UI settings	
web.client.ui.search.and.replace.dialog.default.action	<p>The default action in the Search and Replace dialog.</p> <p>Available values: SEARCH_AND_REPLACE, SET</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>SEARCH_AND_REPLACE</p>
web.client.ui.classification.dialog.default.type	<p>The default classification type in the Classification dialog.</p> <p>Available values: MOVE, COPY</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>MOVE</p>
web.client.ui.show.transition.fields.content	<p>Show content of transition fields in the Field Selection dialog or not.</p> <p>Available values: TRUE, FALSE</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>TRUE</p>
web.client.autoload.catalog	<p>Autoselect Master catalog or catalog stored in cookies after login.</p> <p>Possible values: true, false</p> <p>The default is: true</p>
web.client.menu.initial.structure	<p>Specifies external identifier for structure which will be initially selected in context.</p> <p>If not specified - value from com.heiler.ppm.structure.server/primaryStructureIdentifier will be used.</p> <p>First available value will be used if none of the properties mentioned above specify explicit value.</p>
web.client.popup.initial.structure	<p>Specifies external identifier for structure which will be initially selected in classification popup.</p> <p>If not specified - first available value will be used.</p>

<code>web.client.enum.sort.locale-sensitive</code>  since 8.1.0.02	Specifies whether to use locale-sensitive (= "true") resp. locale-insensitive (= "false") string comparison in enum list and lookup value sorting. Possible values: true, false The default is: false
<code>web.client.enum.sort.case-sensitive</code>  since 8.1.0.02	Specifies whether to use case-sensitive (= "true") resp. case-insensitive (= "false") string comparison in enum list and lookup value sorting. Possible values: true, false If <code>web.client.enum.sort.locale-sensitive</code> is "true" this property will be ignored The default is: false

Vaadin Internal Configuration Parameters	
<code>web.vaadin.productionMode</code>	Enables the application in development mode, must be true in production. Default: true
<code>web.vaadin.disable-xsrf-protection</code>	Enables the Vaadin XSRF protection. Set to true when running automated web tests. Should be false in production. Default: false
<code>web.vaadin.widgetset</code>	Vaadin Widgetset which is used in application. Default: <code>com.heiler.ppm.web.widgetset.Widgetset</code>
<code>web.vaadin.heartbeatInterval</code>	UI Heartbeat interval to track open sessions. https://vaadin.com/book/vaadin7/-/page/application.environment.html#aui_3_2_0_1292 Default value is 300 seconds (5 minutes).
<code>web.vaadin.closeIdleSessions</code>	Close http session after user inactivity. # https://vaadin.com/book/vaadin7/-/page/application.environment.html#aui_3_2_0_1309 Default: true

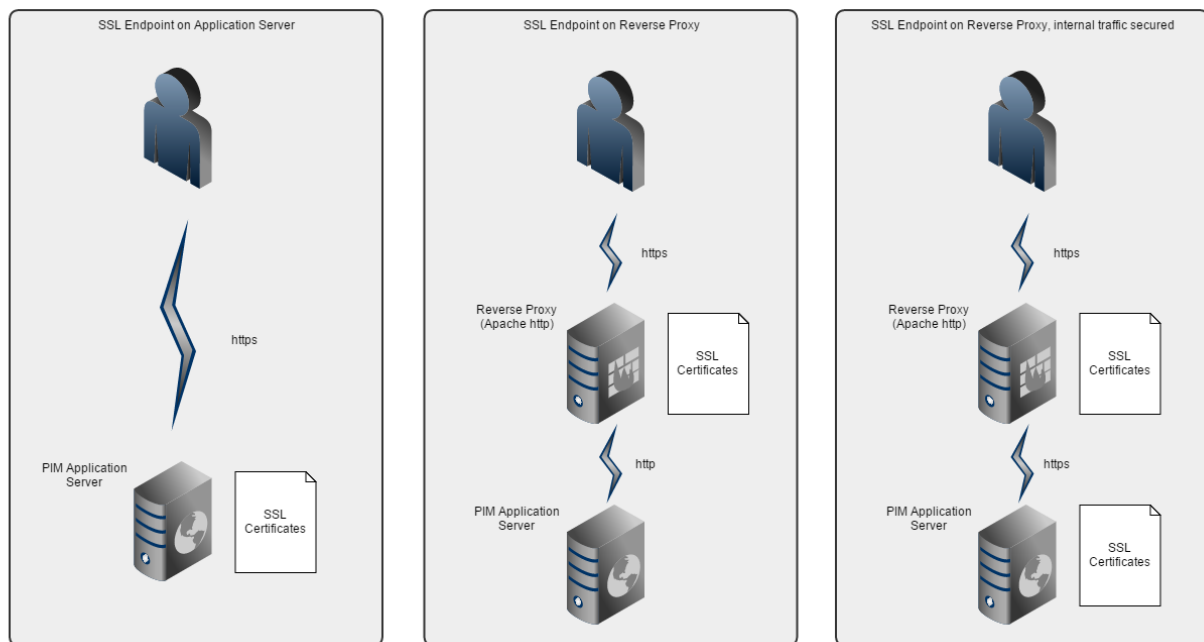
Vaadin Internal Configuration Parameters	
web.vaadin.pushMode	<p>Mode for server side push. Possible values: AUTOMATIC, MANUAL, DISABLED When disabled, some application might not work correctly. Must be disabled for JMeter load test.</p> <p>Default: AUTOMATIC</p>
web.vaadin.pushTransport	<p>Transport mode for server side push. Possible values: WEBSOCKET, STREAMING, LONG_POLLING.</p> <p>Default: STREAMING</p>

6.3 Setup HTTPS/SSL Security

When configuring Product 360 Web for production usage, setting up https security is **mandatory**. Otherwise all user credentials will be send as plain text through the internet. There are two scenarios, how security can be ensured:

- Setup a Reverse Proxy that transparently forwards all requests to the Product 360 Application Server. SSL certificates are installed on the Reverse Proxy.
- Install SSL certificates directly on Product 360 Application Server.

A combination of both is possible, too.



6.3.1 Running Product 360 - Web behind a Reverse Proxy

For SSL support and security reasons, customers typically run web applications behind a dedicated web server (called reverse proxy) which transparently handles all incoming requests from clients and forwards them to the Product 360 -Web application server.

Product 360 - Web supports this scenario and has been tested with Apache 2.2. If you have installed and configured the Apache, the following lines in **httpd.conf** are necessary for request forwarding:

```
# Load the needed mod_proxy modules
LoadModule proxy_module modules/mod_proxy.so
LoadModule proxy_connect_module modules/mod_proxy_connect.so
LoadModule proxy_http_module modules/mod_proxy_http.so

#Reverse Proxy
ProxyPass /pim http://<hpmserver>:<hmpport>/pim
ProxyPassReverse /pim http://<hpmserver>:<hmpport>/pim
```

For setup of SSL, please refer to the corresponding Apache manuals. For a guide how to export a certificate or private key from the Java keystore into an Apache Webserver compatible format, please check this page at <http://security.stackexchange.com/questions/3779/how-can-i-export-my-private-key-from-a-java-keytool-keystore>.

An example configuration for setting up a Reverse Proxy together with a Virtual Host for https looks like this:

```
<VirtualHost _default_:443>
  ProxyPass "/pim" "http://localhost:1512/pim"
  ProxyPassReverse "/pim" "http://localhost:1512/pim"

  LoadModule headers_module modules/mod_headers.so
  # Apache sets X-Forwarded-Host and X-Forwarded-For headers by default, but not X-Forwarded-Proto which is required by Jetty
  RequestHeader set X-Forwarded-Proto "https"

  SSLEngine on
  ServerName localhost:443
  SSLCertificateFile "${SRVROOT}/conf/ssl/server.crt"
  SSLCertificateKeyFile "${SRVROOT}/conf/ssl/server.key"
</VirtualHost>
```

6.3.2 Install SSL certificates on Product 360 Application Server directly

It is possible to setup SSL security on the Product 360 Application server, too. This is useful, if the connection between the Reverse Proxy and the Product 360 Server should be encrypted and secured, too.

To enable https, open the file <P360_SERVER>\configuration\HPM\NetworkConfig.xml.

```
<node identifier="pim-server1" host="localhost" >
  <web useHttps="true">
    <http port="1512"/>
    <https port="8443" keyPassword="password" keystore="C:/Users/sroeck/.keystore" password="password"/>
  </web>
  <data-grid port="1801"/>
  <internal defaultRequestTimeout="300000">
    <hlr-tcp port="1701" />
  </internal>
</node>
```

```

<default-role>CLIENTS_SERVER</default-role>
<default-role>JOB_SERVER</default-role>
</node>

```

Please consult the [Product 360 Configuration guide](#) for a full list of all supported parameters.

Add the following lines to the Product 360 Server launch configuration (wrapper.conf) as JVM arguments to let Jetty know where the SSL certificate can be found:

```

-Djavax.net.ssl.keyStore=C:/Users/sroeck/.keystore
-Djavax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword=password

```

6.4 Setup Load Balancing

6.4.1 Apache Web Server

If there is a cluster of Product 360 servers then the SSL/TLS-enabled Reverse Proxy described above can be configured as a load balancer with sticky sessions:

```

LoadModule proxy_module modules/mod_proxy.so
LoadModule proxy_balancer_module modules/mod_proxy_balancer.so
LoadModule proxy_http_module modules/mod_proxy_http.so
LoadModule slotmem_shm_module modules/mod_slotmem_shm.so
LoadModule lbmethod_byrequests_module modules/mod_lbmethod_byrequests.so #Apache 2.4

Header add Set-Cookie "ROUTEID_HPMW=.%{BALANCER_WORKER_ROUTE}e; path=/" env=BALANCER_ROUTE_CHANGED
<Proxy balancer://hpmwcluster>
    BalancerMember http://<hpmserver01>:<hpmwport01> route=1
    BalancerMember http://<hpmserver02>:<hpmwport02> route=2
    BalancerMember http://<hpmserver03>:<hpmwport03> route=3
    BalancerMember http://<hpmserver04>:<hpmwport04> route=4
    ProxySet stickysession=ROUTEID_HPMW
</Proxy>
ProxyPass /pim balancer://hpmwcluster/pim
ProxyPassReverse /pim balancer://hpmwcluster/pim

```

Host and HTTP port for the nodes are defined in the corresponding elements of the NetworkConfig.xml. Please note that available scheduling algorithms and required modules differ between Apache httpd 2.4 and 2.2. Balancer manager provides some statistics and enables dynamic update of balancer members, please refer to the corresponding paragraph of the httpd documentation for details.

6.4.2 AWS ELB

Following the instructions on the official AWS ELB documentation pages at <http://docs.aws.amazon.com/ElasticLoadBalancing/latest/DeveloperGuide/setting-up-elb.html>

If you want to configure health check, make sure the ping is sent to the login page at <http://server:1501/pim/login>.

Make sure to configure Sticky Sessions and preferably use Application-Controlled Session Stickiness as described on <http://docs.aws.amazon.com/ElasticLoadBalancing/latest/DeveloperGuide/elb-sticky-sessions.html>.

The application cookie name is JSESSIONID, so the configuration might look like this:

```

"AppCookieStickinessPolicies": [

```

```
{
    "PolicyName": "my-app-cookie-policy",
    "CookieName": "JSESSIONID"
}

]
```

6.4.3 Troubleshooting Reverse Proxy / LB Setup and Product 360 Push issues

Product 360 uses Server-side push functionality implemented by the Vaadin framework. The supported modes can be configured in `webfrontend.properties`:

```
# Transport mode for server side push. Possible values: WEBSOCKET, STREAMING, LONG_POLLING. Default is STREAMING.
web.vaadin.pushTransport=STREAMING
```

Please note that WEBSOCKET is not supported.

In case you're experiencing issues after login, e.g. spinning loading indicator, time-outs, unresponsiveness or session time-outs, try one of the following things:

- Switch `pushTransport` mode to `STREAMING` or `LONG_POLLING`. Requires a server restart to take changes in effect. `LONG_POLLING` seem to be more stable behind proxies than `STREAMING`.
- Check if the issue can be reproduced in local network, when calling the app on the server directly.
- Make sure, a proxy doesn't buffer requests.
 - In Apache, add "KeepAlive Off" in virtual host section.
 - In IIS, set "Response buffer treshold" to 0
- Turn http compression off, if enabled.

Application Request Routing

Use this feature to configure proxy settings for Application Request Routing.

☐ Enable request consolidation

Query string support:
Ignore query string

Buffer Setting

Response buffer (KB):
4096

Response buffer threshold (KB):

Proxy Chain

Proxy server:
Example: proxy.contoso.com:8080

Proxy Type

☒ Use URL Rewrite to inspect incoming requests

☒ Enable SSL offloading

Reverse proxy:
wunestestpim01:1512

Alerts

Enabling proxy allows requests to be potentially routed to servers outside of your server farm.

Actions

Apply
Cancel
Back to ARR Cache
Advanced Routing
URL Rewrite...
Help

Features View Content View

Some general hints regarding Push issues with Vaadin can be found on <https://vaadin.com/wiki/-/wiki/Main/Working+around+push+issues>

6.5 Configure Lists Views, Detail Tabs and Action Menus

6.5.1 Overview

Web Access respects the Product 360 domain model definition, i.e. the Repository. That means, that meta information, such as field types, mandatory flags, etc. directly affect the Web UI. Having that said, many parts of the UI are built by referencing repository entities and fields and bring them in the desired structure and order. Since version 7 this composition of repository elements can be done declaratively.

The following elements are be customized declaratively:

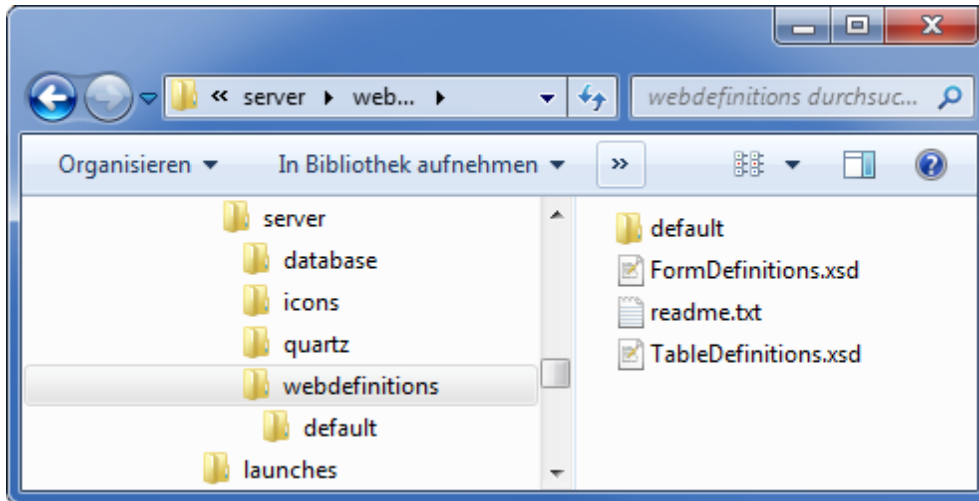
- All list views for the root entities like items, products, variants, tasks, structures and multimedia documents
- Most of the subentity list views, like prices, items/variants of the product, references
- All simple detail tabs like header, texts, change information
- Action menus for items, products, variants, tasks and structures list views

Declarative customization is not (yet) possible for

- Navigation area on the left
- Special detail tabs like media attachments, classification


6.5.2 Declarative Customization Area

During Product 360 server bootstrap (more precisely: when starting the very first Web session) the following folder structure is created in the server configuration area:

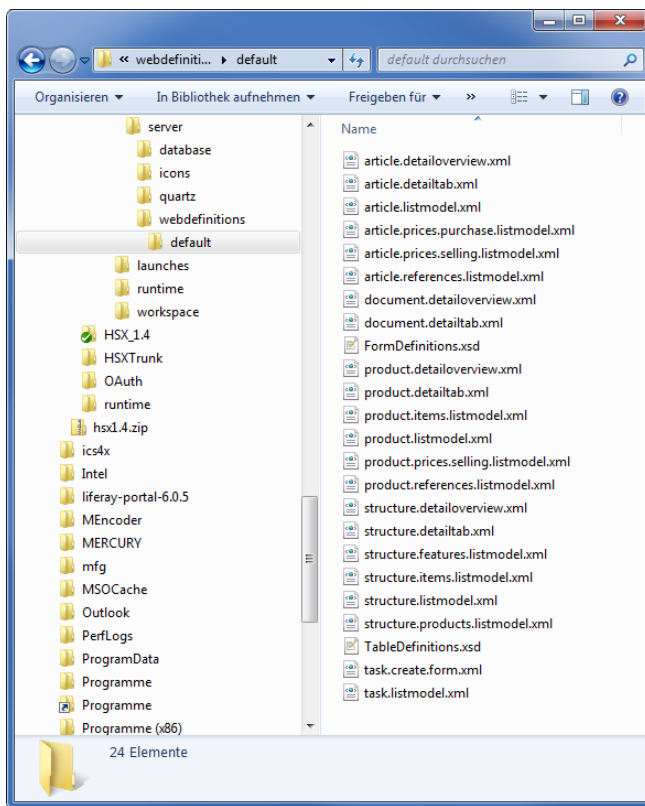


The directory `/webdefinitions` is the place where all customized definition files are loaded from. Initially, this folder only contains a readme file and XML schema files. The subdirectory `/default` contains all definition files. These files are updated on each server start.

To customize a list view or detail tab, copy the corresponding definition file from the `/default` subdirectory into the `/webdefinition` root directory. Then apply the desired changes to the copy of the file.

 Never change the content of the `/default` directory as all your changes will be lost after the next server restart.

A typical list of default definition files looks like this. (This may vary depending on your system setup, like 2pp/3pp and the repository configuration):

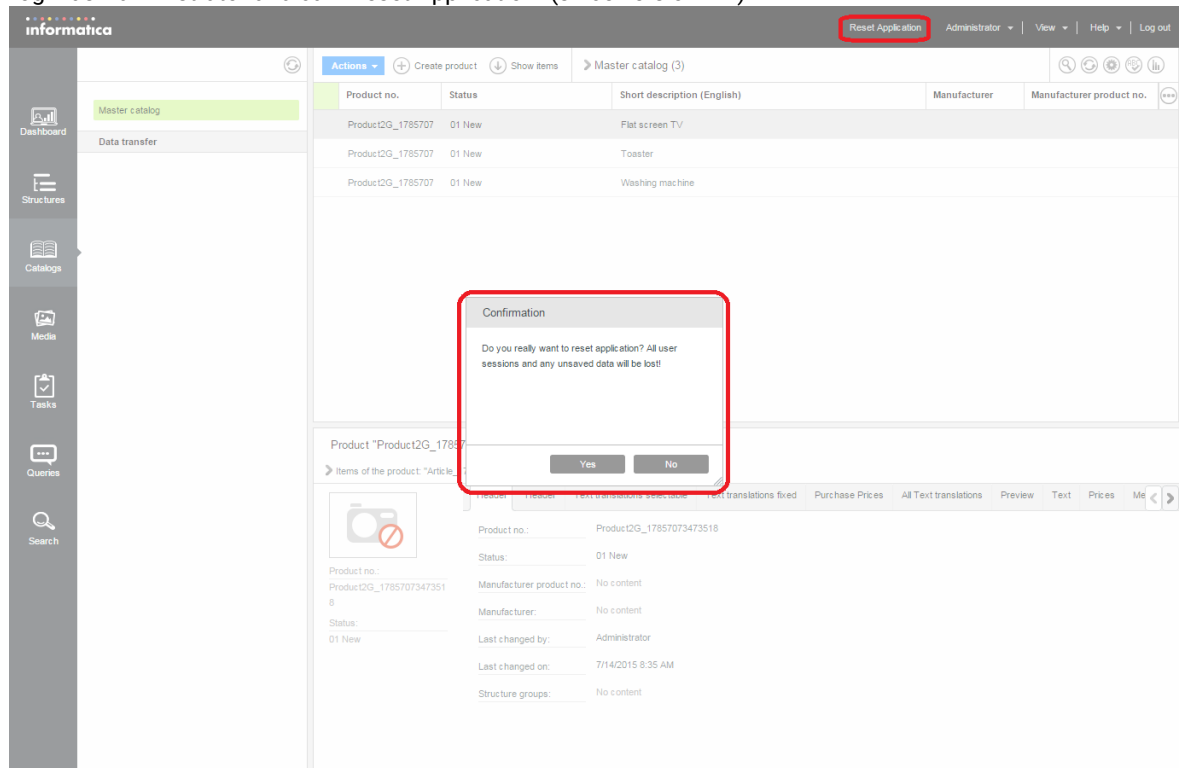


6.5.3 Make Changes to XML Configuration Files

To customize any of the default configuration files follow these steps:

1. Copy the file to be changed from /default into the upper /webdefinitions directory and open it using your favorite XML editor (XSD Schema support!). Please see table below to find the correct file.
2. Change the file, e.g. add another field, another field definition or change the order of definitions
3. Run **one** of the following actions to apply changes

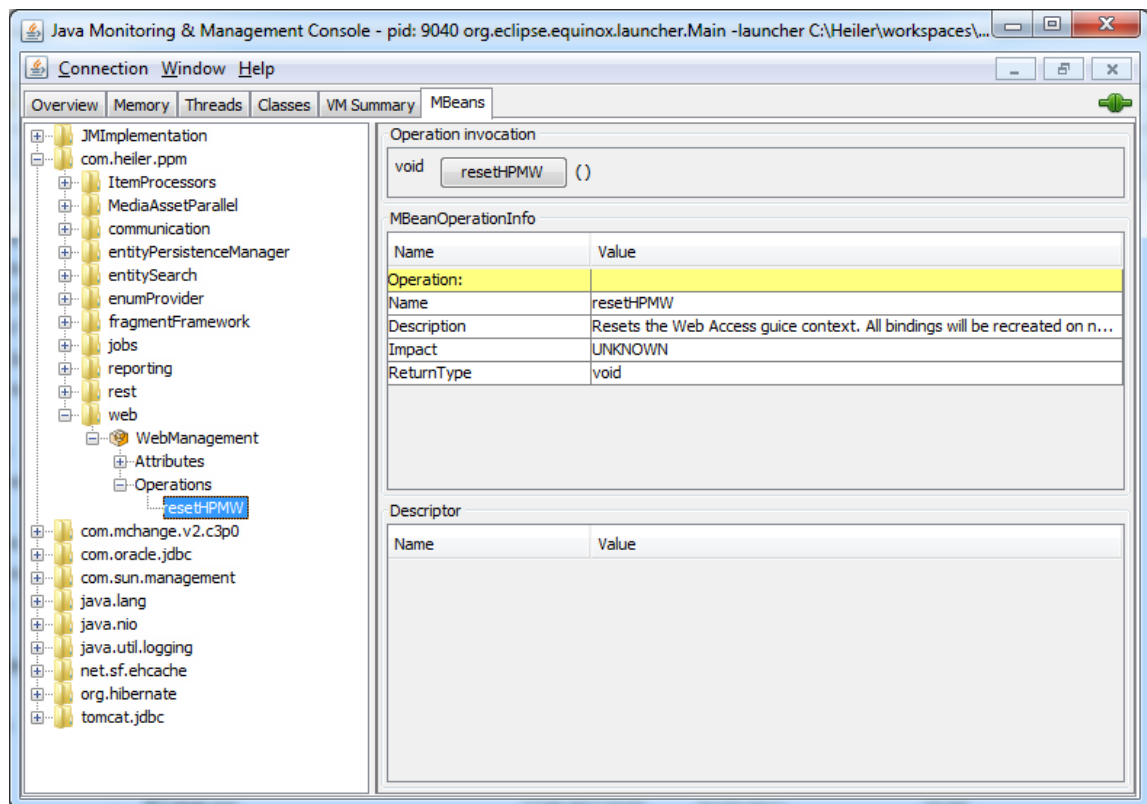
- a. Login as Administrator and call "Reset Application" (since version 7.1)



- b. When having access to the server console, run OSGi command "hpmwReset"

```
ProductManager Server [Eclipse Application] C:\Program Files (x86)\Java\jre7-32bit\bin\java.exe (11.07.2014 08:29:19)
08:30:31,035 INFO [main] [ServerContainer] Increase communication start level from ISOLATION to RUNNING completed (Duration: 0.1801 ms)
08:30:31,037 INFO [main] [ServerContainer] Start completed (Duration: 0:01:08.483)
08:30:31,038 INFO [main] [MainServerApplication] Server started.
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.dashboard.integration.DashboardModule@e0181a
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.export.preview.integration.MultichannelModule@4a
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.article.integration.ArticleModule@145a80c
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.structure.integration.StructureModule@1bc0ff
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.common.integration.HpmStdModule@1bb3c3
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.multimedia.integration.MultimediaModule@b6f987
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.fulltextsearch.integration.FullTextSearchModule@
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.export.integration.ExportModule@c8f334
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.dataquality.integration.DataQualityModule@d6f3f
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.task.integration.TasksModule@2980c8
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.search.integration.SearchModule@c5cea7
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.supplier.integration.HSXIntegrationModule@82658d
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.product.level2pp.integration.Product2PPModule@d
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.app.integration.WebApplicationModule@1fedaa1
08:31:06,517 INFO [qtp28919448-117] [ModuleContributionReaderImpl] Register standard module com.heiler.ppm.web.product.integration.ProductModule@c39591
08:31:11,609 WARN [qtp28919448-121] [SystemRestClientService] HPS Server is not running. ConnectException: Connection refused: connect
hpmwReset
09:04:35,057 INFO [Gogo shell] [GuiceUIProvider] Closed 1 contexts.
09:04:35,057 INFO [Gogo shell] [InjectorUtil] Resetting guice bindings...
Reset command initiated...
osgi>
```

- c. Connect to server via JMX (e.g. with jconsole from the Java-bin directory) and call the MBean hpmwReset in package com.heiler.ppm.web



d. Restart the server

After step 3 you'll have to relogin and the changes should be applied. In case of undesired behaviour please check the server log file.

6.5.4 Example Definitions

Please refer to the following pages for a comprehensive list of example definitions for list views and detail tabs

- [View Definition Examples](#)
- [Detail Tab Definition Examples](#)
- [Action menu definition examples](#)

6.5.5 List of Customization Areas

Filename(s)	Version Info
Purpose	
Products/Items/Variants	
article.detailoverview.xml, product.detailoverview.xml, variant.detailoverview.xml	

Detail preview next to thumbnail in detail form.

informatica

Reset Application Administrator View Help Log out

Actions Create product Show items Master catalog (3)

Master catalog

Data transfer

Dashboard

Structures

Catalogs

Media

Tasks


Queries

Search

Product no.	Status	Short description (English)	Manufacturer	Manufacturer product no.
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Flat screen TV		
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Toaster		
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Washing machine		

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55" LED", 2 more item(s)



Product no.: Product2G_17857073473518

Status: 01 New

Text translations selectable

Text translations fixed

Purchase Prices

All Text translations

Preview

Text

Prices

Media

Class

Product no.: Product2G_17857073473518

Manufacturer product no.: No content

Manufacturer: No content

Last changed by: Administrator

Last changed on: 7/14/2015 9:22 AM

article.detailtab.xml, product.detailtab.xml,
variant.detailtab.xml

All custom detail tabs, e.g. Header, Text, Prices.

The screenshot shows the Informatica MDM application interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Reset Application', 'Administrator', 'View', 'Help', and 'Log out'. The left sidebar contains icons for Dashboard, Structures, Catalogs, Media, Tasks, Queries, and Search. The main area displays the 'Master catalog (3)' list view with columns: Product no., Status, Short description (English), Manufacturer, and Manufacturer product no. Below the list, the detailed view for 'Product2G_17857073473520 - Washing machine' is shown. A red box highlights the 'Header' tab and its content, which includes fields for Product no., Status, Manufacturer product no., Manufacturer, Last changed by, and Last changed on.

Product no.	Status	Short description (English)	Manufacturer	Manufacturer product no.
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Flat screen TV		
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Toaster		
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Washing machine		

Product "Product2G_17857073473520 - Washing machine"

Header | Text translations selectable | Text translations fixed | Purchase Prices | All Text translations | Preview | Text | Prices | Media | Class

Product no.: Product2G_17857073473520
 Status: 01 New
 Manufacturer product no.: No content
 Manufacturer: No content
 Last changed by: Administrator
 Last changed on: 7/13/2015 1:25 PM

article.listmodel.xml, product.listmodel.xml, variant.listmodel.xml

The default list definitions for the master list view.

The screenshot shows the Informatica MDM application interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Reset Application', 'Administrator', 'View', 'Help', and 'Log out'. The left sidebar contains icons for Dashboard, Structures, Catalogs, Media, Tasks, Queries, and Search. The main area displays the 'Master catalog (3)' list view with columns: Product no., Status, Short description (English), and Manufacturer. Below the list, the detailed view for 'Product2G_17857073473520 - Washing machine' is shown. A red box highlights the 'Field Selection' menu, which includes options: Default, Short, Full (DE), Full (EN), Product list multi language, Transition fields, Quality Overview, and Field Selection.

Product no.	Status	Short description (English)	Manufacturer
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Flat screen TV	
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Toaster	
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Washing machine	

Product "Product2G_17857073473520 - Washing machine"

Header | Text translations selectable | Text translations fixed | Purchase Prices | All Text translations | Preview | Text | Prices | Media | Class

Product no.: Product2G_17857073473520
 Status: 01 New
 Manufacturer product no.: No content
 Manufacturer: No content
 Last changed by: Administrator
 Last changed on: 7/13/2015 1:25 PM


article.prices.purchase.listmodel.xml

< 7.1.00

Purchase price list for price tab for items. Replaced with *.detailtab.xml with 7.1.00.

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55" LED", 2 more item(s)



Product no.:
Product2G_17857073473518

Status:
01 New

Header	Text translations selectable	Text translations fixed	Purchase Prices	All Text translations	Preview	Text	Prices	Media	Class
Net customer price EUR:		500.00	Net customer price USD:		552.74				
Non-binding price recom. EUR:		555.00	Non-binding price recom. USD:		613.55				


article.prices.selling.listmodel.xml,
product.prices.selling.listmodel.xml,
variant.prices.selling.listmodel.xml

< 7.1.00

Selling price list for price tab. Replaced with *.detailtab.xml with 7.1.00.

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55" LED", 2 more item(s)



Product no.:
Product2G_17857073473518

Status:
01 New

Header	Text translations selectable	Text translations fixed	Purchase Prices	All Text translations	Preview	Text	Prices	Media	Class																																			
Selling prices (4):																																												
<div> <div>+</div> <div>⊖</div> <div>×</div> </div> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>Price type ▲</th> <th>Price (from 1)</th> <th>Currency</th> <th>Valid in region</th> <th>Valid from</th> <th>Valid until</th> <th>Customer ***</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Net customer price</td> <td>552.74</td> <td>US Dollar</td> <td>Germany</td> <td>7/13/2015</td> <td>12/31/9999</td> <td><Public></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Net customer price</td> <td>500.00</td> <td>Euro</td> <td>Germany</td> <td>7/13/2015</td> <td>12/31/9999</td> <td><Public></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Non-binding price recommendation</td> <td>555.00</td> <td>Euro</td> <td>Germany</td> <td>7/13/2015</td> <td>12/31/9999</td> <td><Public></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Non-binding price recommendation</td> <td>613.55</td> <td>US Dollar</td> <td>Germany</td> <td>7/13/2015</td> <td>12/31/9999</td> <td><Public></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>										Price type ▲	Price (from 1)	Currency	Valid in region	Valid from	Valid until	Customer ***	Net customer price	552.74	US Dollar	Germany	7/13/2015	12/31/9999	<Public>	Net customer price	500.00	Euro	Germany	7/13/2015	12/31/9999	<Public>	Non-binding price recommendation	555.00	Euro	Germany	7/13/2015	12/31/9999	<Public>	Non-binding price recommendation	613.55	US Dollar	Germany	7/13/2015	12/31/9999	<Public>
Price type ▲	Price (from 1)	Currency	Valid in region	Valid from	Valid until	Customer ***																																						
Net customer price	552.74	US Dollar	Germany	7/13/2015	12/31/9999	<Public>																																						
Net customer price	500.00	Euro	Germany	7/13/2015	12/31/9999	<Public>																																						
Non-binding price recommendation	555.00	Euro	Germany	7/13/2015	12/31/9999	<Public>																																						
Non-binding price recommendation	613.55	US Dollar	Germany	7/13/2015	12/31/9999	<Public>																																						

article.reference.form.xml,
product.reference.form.xml,
variant.reference.form.xml

Popup form to create or edit references.

informatica

Reset Application Administrator View Help

Actions Create item To higher-level ob... Master catalog (3) Product Product2G_17857073473518 (3)

Master catalog Data transfer

Dashboard Structures Catalogs Media Tasks Queries Search

Create reference

Complete the fields required for reference creation or click [here](#)

Reference type: Accessories

Referenced object type: Item

Referenced object number:

Number: 1

Sequence:

OK Cancel

☐ Create another reference

article.references.listmodel.xml,
product.references.listmodel.xml,
variant.references.listmodel.xml

List definitions to load references for reference tab. All definitions for products, items (and variants) references are merged into a single table.

informatica

Reset Application Administrator View Help Log out

Actions Create product Show items Master catalog (3)

Product no.	Status	Short description (English)	Manufacturer	Manufacturer product no.
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Flat screen TV		
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Toaster		
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Washing machine		

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Items of the product "Article_17857073473522 - 55" LED", 2 more item(s)

Product no.: Product2G_17857073473518 Status: 01 New

References

Reference type	Referenced object type	Referenced object number	Number	Sequence	Short description
Accessories	Product	100	1	5	
Accessories	Item	110	1	3	

article.quality.status.listmodel.xml,
product.quality.status.listmodel.xml,
variant.quality.status.listmodel.xml

> 7.1.00

List definition for quality status detail tab.

The screenshot shows the Informatica MDM interface. The left sidebar contains navigation icons for Dashboard, Structures, Catalogs, Media, Tasks, Queries, and Search. The main area displays a table of products in the Master catalog. Below the table, the 'Product "Product2G_17857073473519 - Toaster"' is selected. The 'Quality status' tab is active, showing a table of rules. A red box highlights the 'Rule' and 'Status' columns of this table.

Product no.	Status	Short description (English)	Status Mobile	Status Web Shop
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Flat screen TV	OK	Unvalidated
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Toaster	Failed	OK
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Washing machine	OK	Unvalidated
Product2G_9294080	01 New		Failed	Unvalidated
Product2G_9294080	01 New		Failed	Unvalidated

Rule	Status	Message	Ignore	Ignored on	Ignored by
Check Short Description	OK		No		Web
check long desc	Failed	Input data value is blank or null	No		Mob

product.items.listmodel.xml,
product.variants.listmodel.xml,
variant.items.listmodel.xml

List definition that shows the children ArticleType-based entities of the selected entity in a detail tab.

product.items.listmodel.xml only applies to 2pp mode.

product.variants.listmodel.xml and variants.items.listmodel.xml only apply to 3pp mode.

The screenshot shows the Informatica MDM interface. The left sidebar is the same as the previous screenshot. The main area displays a table of products in the Master catalog. Below the table, the 'Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"' is selected. The 'Items of the product' tab is active, showing a table of items. A red box highlights the 'Item no.', 'Status', 'GTIN', 'Net customer price (from 1)', and 'Net customer price: Current' columns of this table.

Product no.	Status	Short description (English)	Manufacturer	Manufacturer product no.
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Flat screen TV		
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Toaster		
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Washing machine		


Item no.	Status	GTIN	Net customer price (from 1)	Net customer price: Current
Article_17857073473522	03 Selling prices OK		499.00	Euro
Article_17857073473523	01 New		555.00	Euro
Article_17857073473524	01 New		500.00	Euro

Media Assets

document.detailoverview.xml

Detail media asset preview next to thumbnail in detail form.

The screenshot shows the Informatica MDM interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation icons for Dashboard, Structures, Catalogs, Media, Tasks, and Queries. The main area is titled 'hlr-system (3)' and shows a list of media assets: '4613159198.png', 'download.jpg', and 'flatscreen.jpg'. The 'flatscreen.jpg' asset is selected, and its details are shown in a tabbed view. The 'Detail' tab is active, displaying the following information:

Header	Detail	Usage list	Image preview
			
File name: flatscreen.jpg			
Format: JPEG			
Created on: 7/14/2015 9:19 AM			
Changed on: 7/14/2015 1:25 PM			

The 'Document identifier' field is highlighted with a red box, showing the value 'hlr-system/flatscreen.jpg'.

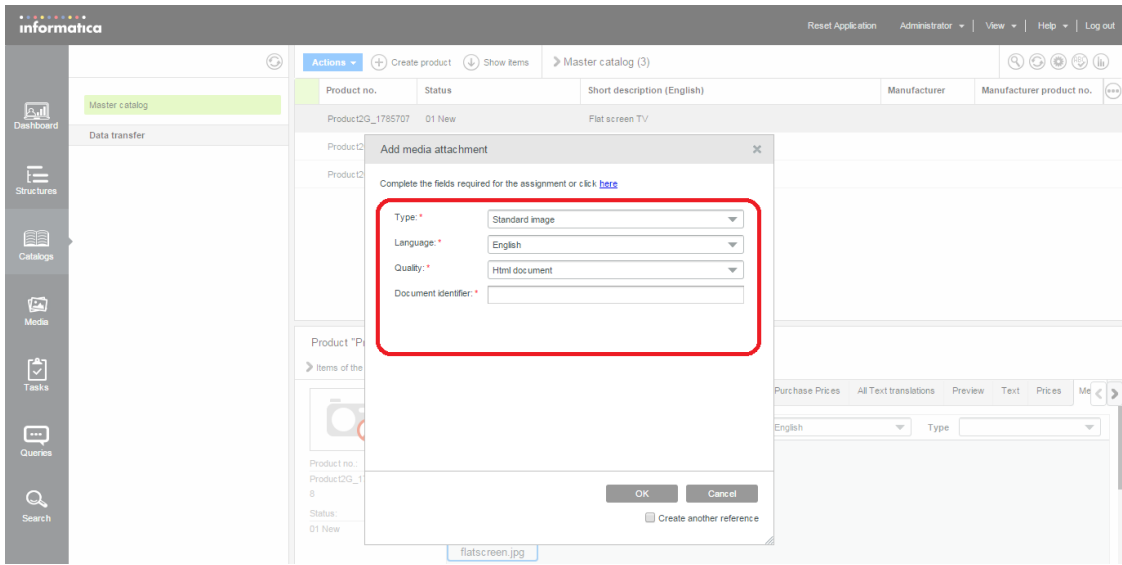
document.detailtab.xml

All custom detail tabs for media assets e.g. Header, Detail.

This screenshot is similar to the one above, but with a red box highlighting the custom detail tabs. The tabs are 'Header', 'Detail', 'Usage list', and 'Image preview'. The 'Detail' tab is active, showing the same information as the previous screenshot. The 'Document identifier' field is also highlighted with a red box, showing the value 'hlr-system/flatscreen.jpg'.

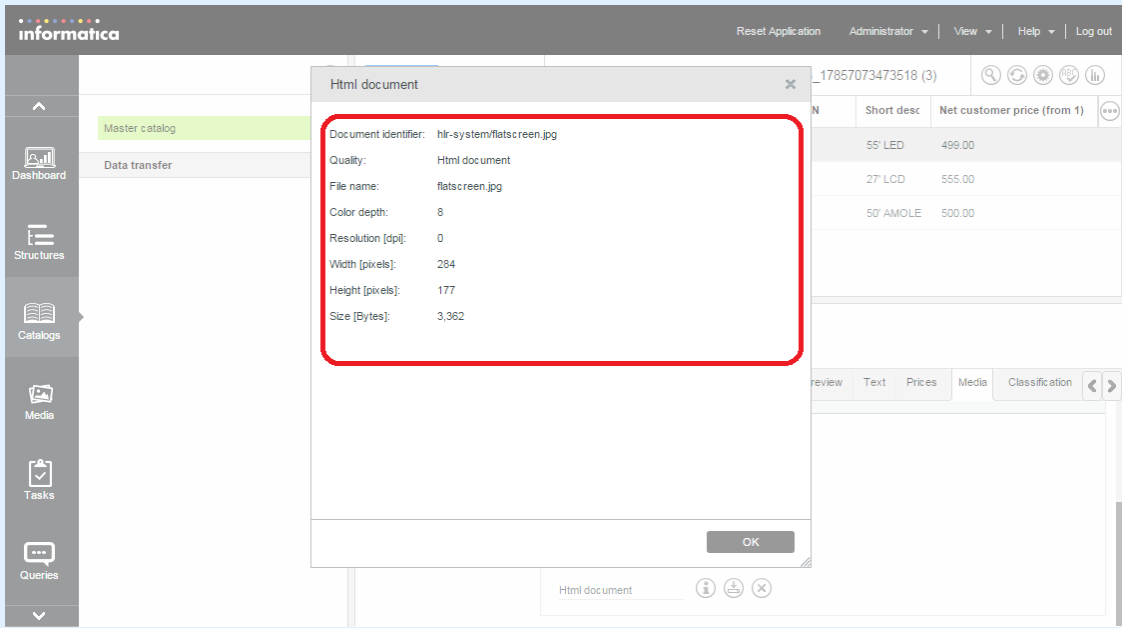
media.assignment.form.xml

Picker window to assign a media asset to an existing product/variant/item



media.hlr.details.xml

Media asset detail popup for Heiler Classic Provider (HLR)



media.hmm.details.xml

Media asset detail popup for Informatica Media Manager (HMM)

media.reference.form.xml

Picker window to assign an item/variant/product to a media asset.

informatica

Reset Application Administrator View Help Log out

hlr-system (3)

testDir

Create assignment

Complete the fields required for reference creation or click [here](#)

Referenced catalog: Master catalog

Referenced object type: Item

Referenced object number: 100

Type: Logo

Language: German

Quality: Internet image

OK Cancel

☐ Create another reference

Short description Manufacturer

Flat screen TV

media.variants.xml

Detail area under the media gallery on product/variant/item media tab.

informatica

Reset Application Administrator View Help Log out

Actions Create product Show items Master catalog (6)

Thumb	Product no.	Status	Manufacturer	Manufacturer product no.	Net customer price
	Product2G_1785707	01 New			500.00
	Product2G_1785707	01 New			
	Product2G_1785707	01 New			
	Product2G_9294080	01 New			
	Product2G_9294080	01 New			
	Product2G_9294080	01 New			

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55" LED", 2 more item(s)

Text translations fixed Purchase Prices All Text translations Preview Text Prices Media Classification

Language English Type

Standard image flatscreen.jpg

Name: No content

Type: Standard image

Description (English): No content

Alternative text (English): No content

Multimedia documents:

Html document

Structures

structure.detailoverview.xml

Detail preview next to thumbnail in detail form for structure groups.

The screenshot shows the Informatica MDM application interface. The left sidebar contains navigation links for Dashboard, Structures, Catalogs, Media, Tasks, Queries, and Search. The main content area displays a table of structure groups. Below the table, the detail view for 'GROUP_1_1' is shown. The 'Structure group identifier' field is highlighted with a red box.

Structure group identifier	Name (English)	Description (English)
GROUP_1_1	Group 1_1	Structure Group 1
GROUP_1_2	Group 1_2	

Structure group "GROUP_1_1 - Group 1_1"

Header Preview Text Media Features Products of structure group Quality status Change information

Structure group identifier: GROUP_1_1

Hierarchical number: No content

Last changed by: Administrator

Last changed on: 7/14/2015 10:43 AM

structure.detailtab.xml

All custom detail tabs for structures, e.g. Header, Text.

The screenshot shows the Informatica MDM application interface. The left sidebar contains navigation links for Dashboard, Structures, Catalogs, Media, Tasks, Queries, and Search. The main content area displays a table of structure groups. Below the table, the detail view for 'GROUP_1_1' is shown. The 'Header' tab is selected, and the 'Structure group identifier' field is highlighted with a red box.

Structure group identifier	Name (English)	Description (English)
GROUP_1_1	Group 1_1	Structure Group 1
GROUP_1_2	Group 1_2	

Structure group "GROUP_1_1 - Group 1_1"

Header Preview Text Media Features Products of structure group Quality status Change information

Structure group identifier: GROUP_1_1

Hierarchical number: No content

Last changed by: Administrator

Last changed on: 7/14/2015 10:43 AM

structure.features.listmodel.xml

List definition of detail tab showing structure group's features.

The screenshot shows the Informatica MDM interface. On the left is a navigation sidebar with icons for Dashboard, Structures, Catalogs, Media, Tasks, and Queries. The main area displays a list of structure groups under 'Heller Standard'. The 'Products' section is expanded, showing 'HIFI-Audio', 'Laptop', and 'Television'. The 'Television' product is selected, and its details are shown in the 'Features' tab. A red box highlights the 'Features' table.

Structure group identifier	Name (English)	Description (English)
StructureGroup_334184090487	Television	
StructureGroup_334184090488	Laptop	
StructureGroup_334184090489	HIFI-Audio	

Structure group "StructureGroup_334184090487 - Television"

Language: English

Name (English)	Description (English)	Preset values (English)	Purpose
Android TV	Android TV enabled		Descriptive
DVB-T		1	
HDMI	HDMI Input Slots	2	Defining; Webshop
VideoOnDemand		Yes	

structure.products.listmodel.xml

List definition for detail tab showing assigned products or items to a structure group.
 structure.products.listmodel.xml only applies to 2/3-pp mode
 structure.items.listmodel.xml only applies to 1pp mode

The screenshot shows the Informatica MDM interface. On the left is a navigation sidebar with icons for Dashboard, Structures, Catalogs, Media, Tasks, and Queries. The main area displays a list of structure groups under 'Heller Standard'. The 'Group 1' section is expanded, showing 'Group 1_1' and 'Group 1_2'. The 'Group 1_1' product is selected, and its details are shown in the 'Products of structure group' tab. A red box highlights the 'Products of structure group' table.

Structure group identifier	Name (English)	Description (English)
GROUP_1_1	Group 1_1	Structure Group 1
GROUP_1_2	Group 1_2	

Structure group "GROUP_1_1 - Group 1_1"

Product no.	Status	Short description (English)
Product2G_92940804911119	01 New	
Product2G_92940804911121	01 New	
Product2G_92940804911122	01 New	

structure.quality.status.listmodel.xml

> 7.1.00

List definition for quality status detail tab for structures.

Tasks

task.create.form.xml

Detail form for task creation popup window.

informatica

Create task

Here you can set the properties of the task based on your selection (note selection in static task).

☐ Create query as a new task

☒ Create selection as a new task

Name: * Products in catalog "Master catalog"

Description:

Created by: Administrator

Created on: 7/14/2015 10:58 AM

Assigned user: * ☐ Administrator

User group: ☐

Delegate:

Responsible: Administrator

Escalation on:

Time expires on:

Anticipated completion on:

Progress: * 0%

Priority: * Normal

Template:

OK Cancel

task.edit.form.xml

> 7.1.00

Detail form for edit task detail view.

informatica

Reset Application Administrator View Help Log out

Actions Accept Open Flex UI My tasks (2)

Type	Name	Priority	Description	Escalation on	Time expires on	Anticipated
✓	Products in catalog "Master catalog"	Normal				
✓	Products in structure group "GROUP_1_1 - Group 1_1"	Normal				

Tasks "Products in catalog "Master catalog""

Name: Products in catalog "Master catalog"

Description: No content

Created by: Administrator

Created on: 7/14/2015 10:58 AM

Assigned user: * ☒ Administrator

User group: ☐ No content

Delegate: No content

Responsible: Administrator

Escalation on: No content

Time expires on: No content

Anticipated completion on: No content

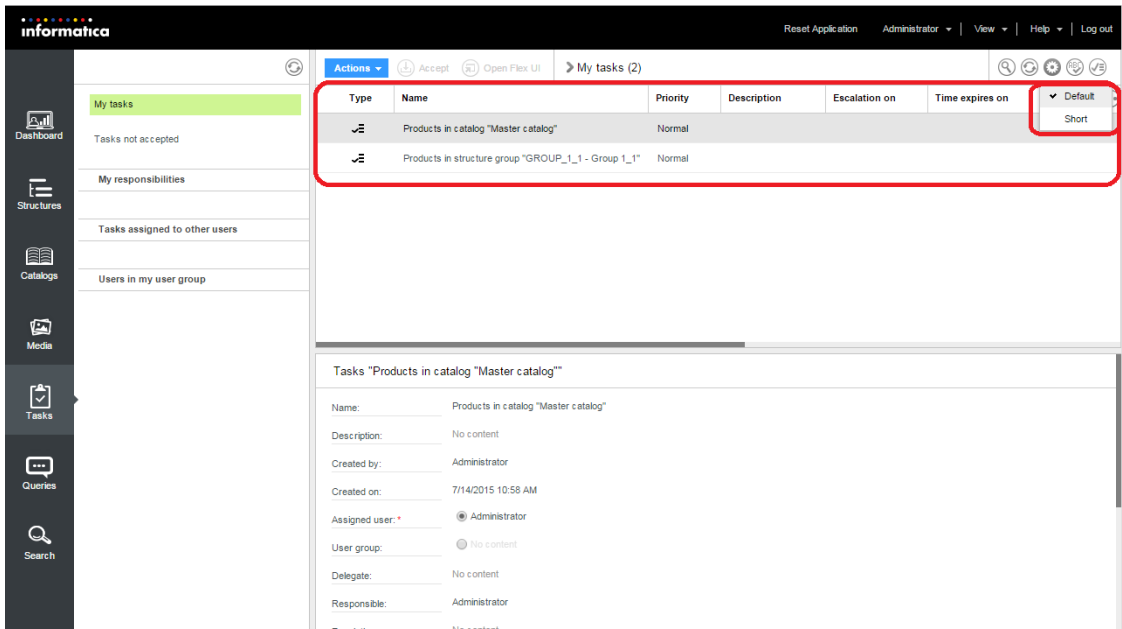
Progress: 0%

Priority: Normal

Template: No content

task.listmodel.xml

List definitions for task main list.



Action menus

menu.actions.list.article.xml,
menu.actions.list.product.xml,
menu.actions.list.structure.xml,
menu.actions.list.task.xml,
menu.actions.list.variant.xml

>=8.0

Action menus for items, products, variants, tasks and structures lists.

The screenshot shows the 'Actions' menu for a list of items. The menu is open, displaying the following options:

- Maintain**
 - Create item
 - Delete item
 - Clone item
 - Classify item
- Tasks**
 - Create task
 - Add to existing task
- Data**
 - Import Data
 - Export selected rows. ►
 - Execute data quality rules
- Navigation**
 - To higher-level object
- More Actions**
 - Search and Replace
- Settings**
 - Configure menu settings

The background table has columns: Thumbnail, Item, and Status. The 'Item' column contains 'Arti' and 'Arti'. The 'Status' column contains '01 N' and '01 N'.

Special

article.gdsn.hierarchy.listmodel.xml

Fields that are shown in GDSN hierarchy view for items. If multiple fields are specified, they are separated with a "-".

The screenshot shows the GDSN hierarchy view. The main table lists items with columns: Item no., GTIN, and Short description. A context menu is open over the item with GTIN 4039247469321, showing options: Search and Replace, Clone item, and Classify item.

The right sidebar shows the GDSN Packaging Hierarchy Navigation tree. The item 'Display shipper (4478247469321)' is highlighted.

The main table data is as follows:

Item no.	GTIN	Short description
50010500	4039247237777	ATORN Tool
50010510	4039247237784	ATORN Tool
50010520	4039247237791	ATORN Tool cases 5-part 530 x 200 x 200 mm
50051400	4039247469321	HK shelves extractable RAL 7035
50051405	4039247469338	HK shelves Withdrawable
50051410	4039247469345	HK shelves Fixed type RAL 7035
50051415	4039247469352	HK shelves Fixed type
50051500	4039247469369	HK Drawers 60 x 40 mm RAL 5010
50051505	4039247469376	HK Drawers 60 x 40 mm
50051510	4039247469383	HK Drawers 90 x 70 mm RAL 5010
50051515	4039247469390	HK Drawers 90 x 70 mm
50051520	4039247469406	HK Drawers 120 x 100 mm RAL 5010

article.kits.listmodel.xml	
List definition for kits and components detail tab list.	

6.5.6 Q&A

Here are some hints based on common issues and provided feedback:

Debugging

In case of something doesn't work as expected please check the server log file .out.log. Also it might be helpful to enable DEBUG logs for everything related to parsing the XML files. This can be done in log4j.xml in server configuration folder by adding these lines:

```
<category name="com.heiler.ppm.web.common.definition">
  <priority value="DEBUG"/>
</category>
```

Referencing Fields and Logical Keys

When referencing a field or an entity type, always use the identifier from the **custom** section of Product 360 repository. Only for logical keys, the type name is needed.

Please also note, that logicalKey element is only needed if

- No default value is provided in repository
- A different value than the default value should be used

For example the following list definition references a price field:

```
<definition i18NKey="%table.config.full.en" identifier="article.table.config.full.en" rootEntity="Article">
  <field identifier="Article.SupplierAID" sortable="true"/>
  <field align="e" identifier="ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount" sortable="true"/>
</definition>
```

Although the price field as multiple logical keys, this is a valid expression as all logical keys have a default in the repository. In this case, the net customer price for EUR with the validity of "now" will be displayed.

To display a price of another type, only the deviant logical key needs to be specified, e.g.

```
<definition i18NKey="%table.config.full.en" identifier="article.table.config.full.en" rootEntity="Article">
  <field identifier="Article.SupplierAID" sortable="true"/>
  <field align="e" identifier="ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount" sortable="true">
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Type" value="5"/>
  </field>
</definition>
```

Display Media Asset Thumbnail in Table

The default installation contains the list definitions FULL (EN) and FULL (DE) where the first column displays a thumbnail of the item/product. If the thumbnail is not displayed as expected, please check the corresponding XML file article.listmodel.xml or product.listmodel.xml.

For the thumbnail column, all three logical keys (language, quality and media asset type) need to be set correctly. The default definition references only language and quality and uses the default media asset type from the repository. To specify an alternative media asset type, the field definition should look like this:


```

<field caption="%web.client.item.table.thumbnail" identifier="ArticleMediaAssetDocument.ImageIdentifier"
sortable="true" width="40">
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleMediaAssetDocumentType.LK.Language" value="English"/>
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleMediaAssetDocumentType.LK.Quality" value="Internet image"/>
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleMediaAssetMapType.LK.MediaAssetType" value="thumbnail"/>
</field>

```

Display Media Asset Thumbnail in Form

Entity thumbnail can be specified like this (possible logical keys same as in table definition):

```

<fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="ArticleMediaAssetDocument">
  <mediaField identifier="ArticleMediaAssetDocument.ImageIdentifier" thumbnailType="original"/>
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleMediaAssetMapType.LK.MediaAssetType" value="Standard image"/>
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleMediaAssetDocumentType.LK.Quality" value="Html document"/>
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleMediaAssetDocumentType.LK.Language" value="Language independent"/>
</fieldGroup>

```

Possible values for thumbnailType attribute is small, normal, big, preview, original(default value).

6.5.7 View Definition Examples

This pages provides example configuration for list view customizings.



When referencing Product 360 Core repository fields, make sure to specify the field identifier from the **custom area** but not the field identifier from the types area.

List with texts in multiple languages

List format:

Product No.	Status	Short description (German)	Short description (English)	Short description (Spanish)	Short description (Finnish)	Short description (French)
-------------	--------	----------------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------	----------------------------

Example screen:

Actions		+ Create product	↓ Show items	Master catalog (3)				
Product no.	Status	Short description (German)	Short description (English)	Short description (Spanish)	Short description (Finnish)	Short description (French)		
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Flachbildfernseher	Flat screen TV	Televisión de pantalla plana	Taulutelevisio	Téléviseur à écran plat		
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Toaster	Toaster	Tostadora	Leivänpaahdin	Grille-pain		
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Waschmaschine	Washing machine	Lavadora	Pesukone	Machine à laver		

Definition (product.listmodel.xml):

```

<definition defaultDefinition="false" i18NKey="Product list multi language" rootEntity="Product2G">

```

```

<field identifier="Product2G.ProductNo" sortable="true"/>
<field identifier="Product2G.CurrentStatus" sortable="true"/>
<field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" sortable="true">
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="7"/>
</field>
<field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" sortable="true">
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="9"/>
</field>
<field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" sortable="true">
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="10"/>
</field>
<field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" sortable="true">
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="11"/>
</field>
<field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" sortable="true">
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="12"/>
</field>
</definition>

```

Variables support for views

`${user.language}` variable could be used as logical key to specify UI language for views.

Definition (product.listmodel.xml):

```

<definition defaultDefinition="false" i18NKey="Product list multi language" rootEntity="Product2G">
  <field identifier="Product2G.ProductNo" sortable="true"/>
  <field identifier="Product2G.CurrentStatus" sortable="true"/>
  <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" sortable="true">
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="${user.language}"/>
  </field>
</definition>

```

List with attribute values and custom caption

Optionally, a custom caption can be specified to replace the default generated column captions.

Example screen:

Actions		Create item		Master catalog (3) > Product Product2G_17857073473518 (3)			
Item no.	Status	Color (English)		Color (German)		...	
Article_17857073473522	01 New	black		schwarz			
Article_17857073473523	01 New	blue		blau			
Article_17857073473524	01 New	red		rot			

List format:








Item no.	Status	Color (English)	Color(German)
----------	--------	-----------------	---------------

Definition (article.listmodel.xml):

```
<definition defaultDefinition="false" i18NKey="Item list with colors" rootEntity="Article">
  <field identifier="Article.SupplierAID" sortable="true"/>
  <field identifier="Article.CurrentStatus" sortable="true"/>
  <field identifier="ArticleAttributeValue.Value" sortable="true" caption="Color (English)">
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeValueType.LK.Language" value="9"/>
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeType.LK.Name" value="Farbe"/>
  </field>
  <field identifier="ArticleAttributeValue.Value" sortable="true" caption="Color (German)">
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeValueType.LK.Language" value="7"/>
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeType.LK.Name" value="Farbe"/>
  </field>
</definition>
```

List with different price types

Example screen:

Actions 		Master catalog (3) > Product Product2G_17857073473518 (3)		    	
Product no.	Net customer price (from 1)	Non-binding price recommendation (from 1)			
Article_17857073473522	499.00	499.50			
Article_17857073473523	555.00	555.55			
Article_17857073473524	500.00	505.00			

List format:

Product No.	Net customer price (from 1)	Non-binding price recommendation (from 1)
-------------	-----------------------------	---

Definition (article.listmodel.xml):

```
<definition defaultDefinition="false" i18NKey="Product list with prices" rootEntity="Article">
  <field identifier="Product2G.ProductNo" sortable="true"/>
  <field identifier="Product2GPriceValueSales.Amount" sortable="true">
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceValueType.LK.LowerBound" value="1"/>
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.PartyMS" value="1[[]]"/>
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Type" value="3"/>
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Currency" value="EUR"/>
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Territory" value="DE"/>
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.ValidAt" value="now"/>
  </field>
  <field identifier="Product2GPriceValueSales.Amount" sortable="true">
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceValueType.LK.LowerBound" value="1"/>
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.PartyMS" value="1[[]]"/>
  </field>
</definition>
```

```

<logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Type" value="5"/>
<logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Currency" value="EUR"/>
<logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Territory" value="DE"/>
<logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.ValidAt" value="now"/>
</field>
</definition>

```

List with Structure Group Name

Example screen:

Product "Product2G_92940804911119"

Items of the product: "Article_92940804911123", 2 more item(s)

Classification Attributes **Items of the product** References Quality status Change information Translation All texts

Product no.:
Product2G_92940804911119
9

Status:
01 New

Name of structure system	Structure group path
Heiler Standard	Group 1 ➔ Group 1_1

Definition (product.listmodel.xml):

```

<definition defaultDefinition="false" i18NKey="Transition fields" rootEntity="Product2G">
  <field identifier="Product2G.ProductNo" sortable="true" />
  <field identifier="Product2G.CurrentStatus" sortable="true" />
  <field identifier="Product2GStructureMap.StructureGroup" sortable="true">
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticleStructureMapType.LK.StructureId" value="10000" />
  </field>
</definition>

```

List of additional price tiers

Item "Article_85164536007369"

Header Preview Text **Prices** Media Classification Attributes Kits and Components References Ordering information Logistics Surcharges Quality status Change information Translation All texts Customers Customers

Item no.:
Article_85164536007369
Status:
01 New

Selling prices (0):

Price type	Price (from 1)	Currency	Valid in region	Valid from	Valid until	Customer
------------	----------------	----------	-----------------	------------	-------------	----------

Purchase prices (2):

Price type	Price (from 1)	Price (from 10,000)	Price (from 100,000)	Price (from 1,000,000)	Currency	Valid in region	Valid from	Valid until	Supplier
Gross list price	50.00	48.00	44.00		Euro	Germany	12/30/1899	12/31/9999	Heiler Product Manager
Net list price	54.00		50.00		Euro	Germany	12/30/1899	12/31/9999	Heiler Product Manager

File: article.detailtab.xml, section detail_purchase_prices

```

<tableDefinition i18NKey="%web.client.article.tab.prices.purchase" identifier="detail_purchase_prices"
rootEntity="ArticlePricePurchase">
  <field identifier="ArticlePricePurchase.PriceType" sortable="false"/>
    <field align="e" identifier="ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount" sortable="false">
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceValueType.LK.LowerBound" value="1"/>
    </field>
    <field align="e" identifier="ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount" sortable="false">
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceValueType.LK.LowerBound" value="10"/>
    </field>
    <field align="e" identifier="ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount" sortable="false">
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceValueType.LK.LowerBound" value="100"/>
    </field>
    <field align="e" identifier="ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount" sortable="false">
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceValueType.LK.LowerBound" value="1000"/>
    </field>
    <field identifier="ArticlePricePurchase.Currency" sortable="true"/>
    <field identifier="ArticlePricePurchase.Territory" sortable="true"/>
    <field identifier="ArticlePricePurchase.ValidFrom" sortable="true"/>
    <field identifier="ArticlePricePurchase.ValidTo" sortable="true"/>
    <field identifier="ArticlePricePurchase.Supplier" sortable="true"/>
</tableDefinition>

```

List of DQ Status per Channel (Transition Fields)

<div> <div>Actions</div> <div> <div>+</div> Create product <div>↓</div> Show items </div> <div>Master catalog (7)</div> </div> <div> <div>🔍</div> <div>🔄</div> <div>⚙️</div> <div>🌐</div> <div>📄</div> </div>					⋮
Product no.	Status	Short description (English)	Status Mobile	Status Web Shop	
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Flat screen TV	🟢 OK	🟡 Unvalidated	
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Toaster	🔴 Failed	🟢 OK	
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Washing machine	🟢 OK	🟡 Unvalidated	
Product2G_9294080	01 New		🔴 Failed	🟡 Unvalidated	
Product2G_9294080	01 New		🔴 Failed	🟡 Unvalidated	

File: product.listmodel.xml

```

<definition defaultDefinition="true" i18NKey="Quality Overview" identifier="product.table.config.dq"
rootEntity="Product2G">
  <field identifier="Product2G.ProductNo" sortable="true" width="100"/>
  <field identifier="Product2G.CurrentStatus" sortable="true" width="180"/>
  <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" sortable="true">
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="English"/>
  </field>

  <field identifier="Product2G.Status" sortable="true" caption="Status Mobile">
    <transitionField identifier="QualityStatusSummary.Status">
      <logicalKey identifier="StatusSummaryType.LK.Channel" value="Mobile"/>
    </transitionField>
  </field>
  <field identifier="Product2G.Status" sortable="true" caption="Status Web Shop">
    <transitionField identifier="QualityStatusSummary.Status">
      <logicalKey identifier="StatusSummaryType.LK.Channel" value="Web Shop"/>
    </transitionField>
  </field>
</definition>

```

```
</field>
</definition>
```

List of DQ Rule Status and Message (Transition Fields)

<div> <div>Actions</div> <div> <div>+</div> Create product <div>↓</div> Show items </div> <div>Master catalog (7)</div> </div>					
Product no.	Status	Short description (English)	Long Descr Status	Long Descr Message	
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Flat screen TV	OK	No Error	
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Toaster	Failed	Input data value is blank or null	
Product2G_1785707	01 New	Washing machine	OK	No Error	
Product2G_9294080	01 New		Failed	Input data value is blank or null	
Product2G_9294080	01 New		Failed	Input data value is blank or null	

File: product.listmodel.xml

```
<definition defaultDefinition="false" i18NKey="Quality Rule Status" identifier="product.table.config.dqrule"
rootEntity="Product2G">
  <field identifier="Product2G.ProductNo" sortable="true" width="100"/>
  <field identifier="Product2G.CurrentStatus" sortable="true" width="180"/>
  <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" sortable="true">
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="English"/>
  </field>

  <field identifier="Product2G.Status" sortable="true" caption="Long Descr Status">
    <transitionField identifier="QualityStatusEntry.Status">
      <logicalKey identifier="StatusEntryType.LK.ProcessIdentifier" value="Check long desc"/>
    </transitionField>
  </field>

  <field identifier="Product2G.Status" sortable="true" caption="Long Descr Message">
    <transitionField identifier="QualityStatusEntry.Message">
      <logicalKey identifier="StatusEntryType.LK.ProcessIdentifier" value="Check long desc"/>
    </transitionField>
  </field>
</definition>
```

6.5.8 Detail Tab Definition Examples

This pages provides example configurations for detail tab customizings.



When referencing Product 360 Core repository fields, make sure to specify the field identifier from the **custom area** but not the field identifier from the types area.

Change Detail Preview Area

The preview area next to the thumbnail can be changed. This example removes the status field and adds the last change user instead.

Example Screen:

Product no.:
Product2G_334184090493
Last changed by:
Administrator

Definition (product.detailoverview.xml)


```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<formDefinitions xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="FormDefinitions.xsd">
  <definition position="2147483647" rootEntity="Product2G">
    <column>
      <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="Product2GMediaAssetDocument">
        <field identifier="Product2GMediaAssetDocument.ImageIdentifier"/>
        <logicalKey identifier="ArticleMediaAssetMapType.LK.MediaAssetType" value="Standard image"/>
        <logicalKey identifier="ArticleMediaAssetDocumentType.LK.Quality" value="Html document"/>
        <logicalKey identifier="ArticleMediaAssetDocumentType.LK.Language" value="Language independent"/>
      </fieldGroup>
      <fieldGroup>
        <field identifier="Product2G.ProductNo" readOnly="true"/>
      </fieldGroup>
      <fieldGroup subEntityId="Product2GLog">
        <field identifier="Product2GLog.ModificationUser"/>
      </fieldGroup>
    </column>
  </definition>
</formDefinitions>
```

Two column layout with language picker

Example screen:

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55" LED", 2 more item(s)

Header	Text translations selectable	Preview	Text	Prices	Media	Classification	Attributes	Items of the product
	Languages English	Languages German	Short description: Flat screen TV	Short description: Flachbildfernseher	Long description: High resolution display!	Long description: Hochauflösendes Display!	Keywords: No content	Keywords: No content

Product no.:
Product2G_17857073473518
Status:
01 New

Definition (product.detailtab.xml):


```
<definition debugId="" i18NKey="Text translations selectable" id="sdk.textTranslations.selectable" permissionId=""
rootEntity="Product2G" position="11">
  <column>
    <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="Product2GLang">
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" readOnly="false"/>
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionLong" readOnly="false"/>
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.Keyword" readOnly="false"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="false" identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language"
selectable="true" value="9"/>
    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
  <column>
    <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="Product2GLang">
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" readOnly="false"/>
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionLong" readOnly="false"/>
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.Keyword" readOnly="false"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="false" identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language"
selectable="true" value="7"/>
    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
</definition>
```

Two column layout with fixed language

Example screen:

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55' LED", 2 more item(s)

Header	Text translations selectable	Text translations fixed	Preview	Text	Prices	Media	Classification	Attributes
 <p>Product no.: Product2G_17857073473518 Status: 01 New</p>	<p>Language: English</p> <p>Short description: Flat screen TV</p> <p>Long description: High resolution display!</p> <p>Keywords: No content</p>	<p>Language: Finnish</p> <p>Short description: Taulutelevisio</p> <p>Long description: No content</p> <p>Keywords: No content</p>						

Definition (product.detailtab.xml):

```
<definition debugId="" i18NKey="Text translations fixed" id="sdk.textTranslations.fixed" permissionId=""
rootEntity="Product2G" position="12">
  <column>
    <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="Product2GLang">
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" readOnly="false"/>
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionLong" readOnly="false"/>
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.Keyword" readOnly="false"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="false" identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" selectable="false" value="9"/>
    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
</definition>
```



```

        </column>
        <column>
            <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="Product2GLang">
                <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" readOnly="false"/>
                <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionLong" readOnly="false"/>
                <field identifier="Product2GLang.Keyword" readOnly="false"/>
                <logicalKey displayAllValues="false" identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" selectable="false" value="11"/>
            </fieldGroup>
        </column>
    </definition>

```

Variables support for detail tabs

`${user.language}` variable could be used as logical key to specify UI language for details tabs.

Definition (product.detailtab.xml):

```

<definition debugId="" i18NKey="Text translations fixed" id="sdk.textTranslations.fixed" permissionId=""
rootEntity="Product2G" position="12">
    <column>
        <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="Product2GLang">
            <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" readOnly="false"/>
            <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionLong" readOnly="false"/>
            <field identifier="Product2GLang.Keyword" readOnly="false"/>
            <logicalKey displayAllValues="false" identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" selectable="false" value="${
user.language}"/>
        </fieldGroup>
    </column>
    <column>
        <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="Product2GLang">
            <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" readOnly="false"/>
            <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionLong" readOnly="false"/>
            <field identifier="Product2GLang.Keyword" readOnly="false"/>
            <logicalKey displayAllValues="false" identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" selectable="false" value="11"/>
        </fieldGroup>
    </column>
</definition>

```

Detail Tab with specific attributes

Instead of showing all attributes you can also add a fixed list of attributes to a tab. You can also mix attributes with normal fields by adding them to different field groups. If the attribute doesn't exist for the selected item or product, the widget is not rendered. That means, that users can create or edit attribute values but cannot create new attributes by themselves.

Example that shows the attributes Width and Height (product.detailtab.xml):

```

<definition debugId="attr" i18NKey="Custom attributes" permissionId="" position="1" rootEntity="Product2G">
    <column>
        <enumGrouping caption="%web.client.login.form.language" enumIdentifier="Enum.Language.WithLanguageIndependent"
selectable="true" value="9"/>

        <fieldGroup subEntityId="Product2GAttributeValue" displaySectionWidget="false">
            <field identifier="Product2GAttributeValue.Value"/>
            <logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeValueType.LK.Language" value="9"/>
        </fieldGroup>
    </column>
</definition>

```

```

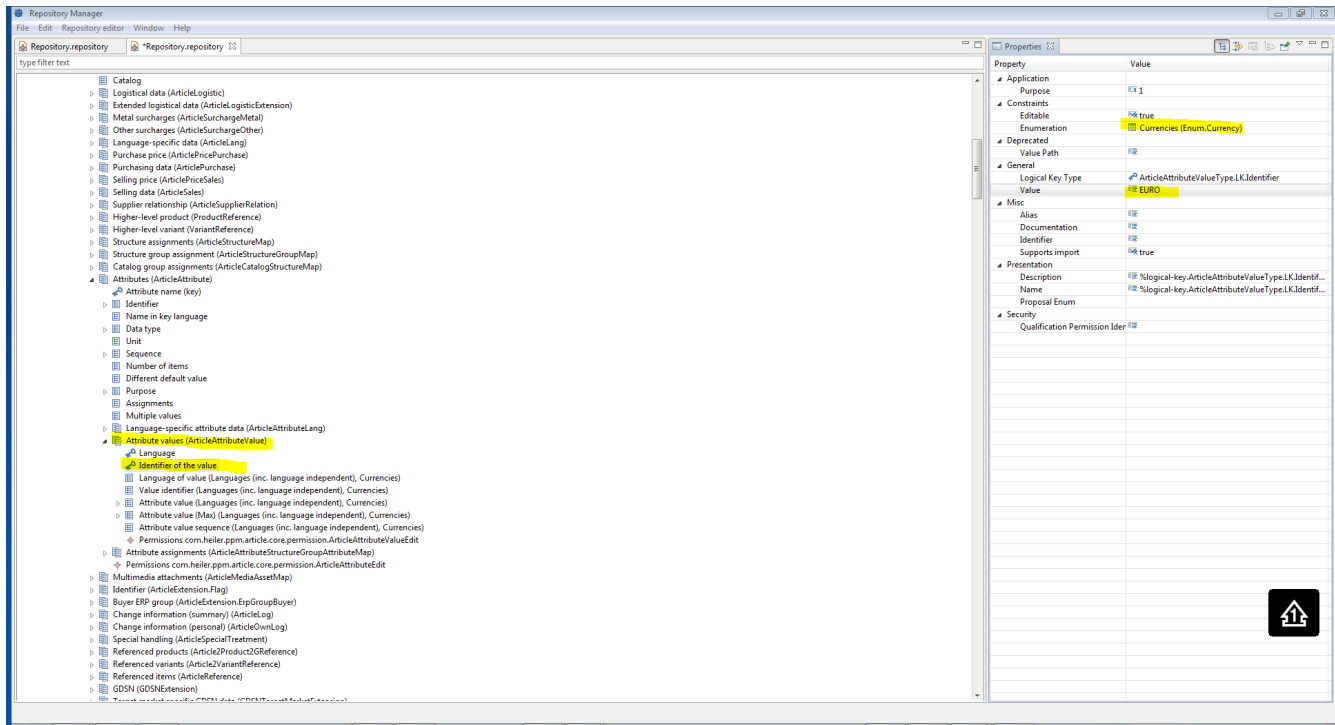
<logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeType.LK.Name" value="Width"/>
</fieldGroup>
<fieldGroup subEntityId="Product2GAttributeValue" displaySectionWidget="false">
  <field identifier="Product2GAttributeValue.Value"/>
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeValueType.LK.Language" value="9"/>
  <logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeType.LK.Name" value="Height"/>
</fieldGroup>
</column>
</definition>

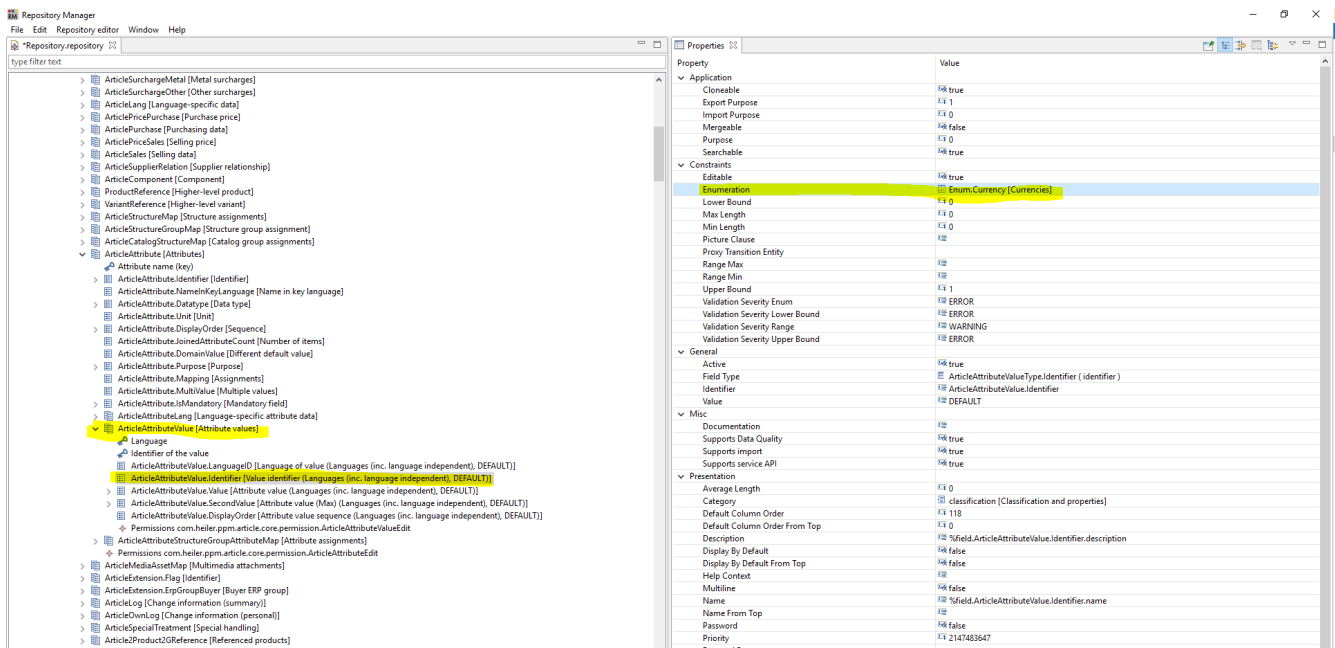
```

Detail Tab and editing multi-value attribute values

There is an "extra editing mode" for multi attribute values in web, which loads them in an single attribute editor to be able to edit an single value of the list of values identified over an logical key identifier enum. To trigger the new multi attribute in single editor mode, specify an identifier enum with the attributes values identifier logical key, this activates the new mode, if no enum is specified than the standard multi attribute editor in multi mode is used. Don't forget to change the default value of the logical key to an value from the enumeration.

Activating the multi-value attribute editor by specifying an identifier enum in the repository. In the example below the Currency enum was used.





Additionally you need to specify a logical key combination to refer to an attribute value in the webs detail tab definition XML, this can be done by using an enum grouping for the identifier enumeration and set the identifier logical key to selectable="true". Another possible option is to specify each logical key combination as an extra field group.

Using an enum grouping to handle all combination of logical keys by an combobox.

```
<definition debugId="product_attributes_tab" i18NKey="%web.product.detail.tab.attributes"
permissionId="web.product.detail.tabs.attributes" position="60" rootEntity="Product2G">
  <column>
    <enumGrouping caption="%web.client.login.form.language" enumIdentifier="Enum.Language.WithLanguageIndependent"
selectable="true" values="English"/>
    <enumGrouping caption="Currency" enumIdentifier="Enum.Currency" selectable="true" value="EUR"/>
    <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="Product2GAttributeValue">
      <field identifier="Product2GAttributeValue.Value"/>
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeValueType.LK.Identifier" selectable="true" value="EUR"/>
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeValueType.LK.Language" selectable="true" value="English"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="true" hidden="true" identifier="ArticleAttributeValueType.LK.Name"/>
    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
</definition>
```

Alternatively using extra field group for each combination of logical keys.

```

<definition debugId="variant_attributes_tab1" i18NKey="attribute(Euro)" permissionId="web.variant.detail.tabs.attributes" position="61" rootEntity="Variant">
  <column>
    <enumGrouping caption="%web.client.login.form.language" enumIdentifier="Enum.Language.WithLanguageIndependent" selectable="true" value="9"/>
    <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="VariantAttributeValue">
      <field identifier="VariantAttributeValue.Value"/>
      <logicalKey hidden="true" identifier="ArticleAttributeValueType.LK.Identifier" value="Euro"/>
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeValueType.LK.Language" selectable="true" value="English"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="true" hidden="true" identifier="ArticleAttributeType.LK.Name"/>
    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
</definition>
<definition debugId="variant_attributes_tab2" i18NKey="attribute(GBP)" permissionId="web.variant.detail.tabs.attributes" position="62" rootEntity="Variant">
  <column>
    <enumGrouping caption="%web.client.login.form.language" enumIdentifier="Enum.Language.WithLanguageIndependent" selectable="true" value="9"/>
    <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="VariantAttributeValue">
      <field identifier="VariantAttributeValue.Value"/>
      <logicalKey hidden="true" identifier="ArticleAttributeValueType.LK.Identifier" value="GBP"/>
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticleAttributeValueType.LK.Language" selectable="true" value="English"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="true" hidden="true" identifier="ArticleAttributeType.LK.Name"/>
    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
</definition>


```

Logical Keys exploded

Example screen:

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

➤ Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55' LED", 2 more item(s)



Product no.: Product2G_17857073473518

Status: 01 New

Header	Text translations selectable	Text translations fixed	All Text tran
<u>Long description:</u>			
Keywords:	No content		
Language	French		
Short description:	Téléviseur à écran plat		
Long description:	No content		
Keywords:	No content		
Language	German		
Short description:	Flachbildfernseher		
Long description:	Hochauflösendes Display!		
Keywords:	No content		
Language	Italian		
Short description:	No content		
Long description:	No content		

Definition (product.detailtab.xml):

```
<definition debugId="" i18NKey="All Text translations" id="sdk.textTranslations.all" permissionId=""
rootEntity="Product2G" position="13">
  <column>
    <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="Product2GLang">
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" readOnly="false"/>
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionLong" readOnly="false"/>
      <field identifier="Product2GLang.Keyword" readOnly="false"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="true" identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" selectable="false"/>
    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
</definition>
```

```

    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
</definition>

```

Logistic Extension Data with multiple Logical Keys


Use Case:

- Logistic Extension Data has 5 logical keys and can be used to store data to a (sub)set of these keys, e.g. language and customer specific.

Example Screen:

Item "Article_17857073473522 - 55' LED"

Parent product: "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Header	Logistic Extensions	Preview	Text	Prices	Media	Classification	Attributes	Kits and Components	Re
 <p>Item no.: Article_17857073473522</p> <p>Status: 01 New</p>	<p>Language: Language independent</p> <p>Units: <input type="text" value="ampere"/></p> <p>Suppliers (inc. main supplier): <input type="text" value="Heiler Product Manager"/></p> <p>Code128: 153</p> <p>GTIN-14: 864</p>								

Definition (article.detailtab.xml):

```

<definition debugId="" i18NKey="Logistic Extensions" id="sdk.item.logisticExtensions" permissionId=""
rootEntity="Article" position="14">
  <column>
    <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="ArticleLogisticExtension">
      <field identifier="ArticleLogisticExtension.Code128" readOnly="false"/>
      <field identifier="ArticleLogisticExtension.Ean14" readOnly="false"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="false" identifier="ArticleLogisticExtensionType.LK.Classifier"
value="ArticleLogisticExtension" selectable="false"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="false" identifier="ArticleLogisticExtensionType.LK.Territory" value="WORLD"
selectable="false"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="false" identifier="ArticleLogisticExtensionType.LK.PartyMS" value="3[]"
selectable="true"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="false" identifier="ArticleLogisticExtensionType.LK.PackagingUnit"
value="134[]" selectable="true"/>
      <logicalKey displayAllValues="false" identifier="ArticleLogisticExtensionType.LK.Language" value="-1"
selectable="false"/>
    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
</definition>

```

Fullqualified Purchase Prices

Use Case:

Allow viewing and editing of full qualified prices. Note: Listing of all available prices is not possible using XML definitions.

Example Screen:

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55" LED", 2 more item(s)

Product no.:	!%web.client.product.tab.head.tabname!	Text translations selectable	Text translations fixed	Purchase Prices	All Text trans
Product2G_17857073473518	Net customer price EUR:	<input type="text" value="500.00"/>	Net customer price USD:	552.74	
Status:	Non-binding price recom. EUR:	555.00	Non-binding price recom. USD:	613.55	
01 New					

Definition (product.detailtab.xml):

```
<definition debugId="" i18NKey="Purchase Prices" id="sdk.productprices"
  permissionId="" position="12" rootEntity="Product2G">
  <column>
    <fieldGroup subEntityId="Product2GPriceValueSales"
      displaySectionWidget="false">
      <field identifier="Product2GPriceValueSales.Amount" caption="Net customer price EUR" />
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Type" value="3" />
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Currency"
        value="EUR" />
    </fieldGroup>
    <fieldGroup subEntityId="Product2GPriceValueSales"
      displaySectionWidget="false">
      <field identifier="Product2GPriceValueSales.Amount" caption="Non-binding price recom. EUR" />
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Type" value="5" />
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Currency"
        value="EUR" />
    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
  <column>
    <fieldGroup subEntityId="Product2GPriceValueSales"
      displaySectionWidget="false">
      <field identifier="Product2GPriceValueSales.Amount" caption="Net customer price USD" />
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Type" value="3" />
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Currency"
        value="USD" />
    </fieldGroup>
    <fieldGroup subEntityId="Product2GPriceValueSales"
      displaySectionWidget="false">
      <field identifier="Product2GPriceValueSales.Amount" caption="Non-binding price recom. USD" />
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Type" value="5" />
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Currency"
        value="USD" />
    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
</definition>
```

Editable Item Preview Panel


Use Case:

Allow fast editing of very often needed fields without having to switch tabs, e.g. Status field.

Example Screen:

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55' LED", 2 more item(s)



Product no.: Product2G_17857073473518

Status: 01 New

Header

Text translations selectable

01 New

02 Purchase prices OK

03 Selling prices OK

04 Commercial data OK

05 Initial classification OK

06 Long description OK

07 Attributes OK

08 Internet image OK

09 Print image OK

1-9/10

Product no.:	Product2G_17857073473518
Status:	01 New
Manufacturer product no.:	No content
Manufacturer:	No content
Last changed by:	Administrator
Last changed on:	7/13/2015 5:30

Definition (product.detailoverview.xml):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<formDefinitions xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="FormDefinitions.xsd">
  <definition position="2147483647" rootEntity="Product2G">
    <column>
      <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true">
```



```

        <field identifier="Product2G.ProductNo" readOnly="true"/>
        <field identifier="Product2G.CurrentStatus" readOnly="false"/>
    </fieldGroup>
</column>
</definition>
</formDefinitions>

```


Display Structure Group Assignment

Use Case: Display the structure group assignment of a given structure system.

Example Screen:

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55" LED", 2 more item(s)

Head 2	Header	Text translations selectable	Text translations fixed	Purchase Prices	All Text translations	Preview	Text	Prices	M	<	>
											
Product no.:		Product2G_17857073473518									
Status:		01 New									
Manufacturer product no.:		No content									
Manufacturer:		No content									
Last changed by:		Administrator									
Last changed on:		7/14/2015 1:26 PM									
Structure groups:		No content									

Definition (product.detailtab.xml):

```

<definition debugId="product_head_tab" i18NKey="Head 2"
permissionId="com.heiler.ppm.web.app.view.detail.product.tabs.HeadTab" position="10" rootEntity="Product2G">
    <column>
        <fieldGroup>
            <field identifier="Product2G.ProductNo"/>
            <field identifier="Product2G.CurrentStatus"/>
            <field identifier="Product2G.ManufacturerAID"/>
            <field identifier="Product2G.ManufacturerName"/>
            <field identifier="Product2GLog.ModificationUser"/>
            <field identifier="Product2GLog.ModificationDate"/>
        </fieldGroup>
        <fieldGroup subEntityId="Product2GStructureMap" displaySectionWidget="false">
            <field identifier="Product2GStructureMap.StructureGroup" readOnly="true"/>
            <!-- StructureId can be taken from url in Product 360 Web when navigating to structure group. -->
            <logicalKey identifier="ArticleStructureMapType.LK.StructureId" value="10000" />
        </fieldGroup>
    </column>
</definition>

```


Editable List of Sub Entities

Use Case: Show a list of all available subentities to an entity (e.g. item) and provide CRUD functionality.

Example Screen:

Item "Article_17857073473522 - 55' LED"

Parent product: "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"



Item no.:
Article_17857073473522
Status:
01 New

Supplier/customer	Packing unit	Code39	GTIN-14
Heiler Product Manager	ampere		864
Heiler Product Manager	a millionth of a meter		

Definition (article.detailtab.xml)

```
<definition id="sdk.item.list.subentities.editable" rootEntity="Article" i18NKey="Article Logistic Extensions"
position="14">
  <column>
    <tableGroup>
      <actionPanel>
        <actionButton action="create"/>
        <actionButton action="delete"/>
        <actionButton action="edit"/>
        <fieldFormGroup>
          <field identifier="ArticleLogisticExtension.Party"/>
          <field identifier="ArticleLogisticExtension.PackagingUnit"/>
          <field identifier="ArticleLogisticExtension.Code39"/>
          <field identifier="ArticleLogisticExtension.Ean14"/>
        </fieldFormGroup>
      </actionPanel>
      <tableDefinition rootEntity="ArticleLogisticExtension">
        <field identifier="ArticleLogisticExtension.Party"/>
        <field identifier="ArticleLogisticExtension.PackagingUnit"/>
        <field identifier="ArticleLogisticExtension.Code39"/>
        <field identifier="ArticleLogisticExtension.Ean14"/>
      </tableDefinition>
    </tableGroup>
  </column>
</definition>
```

Editable List of Retail Prices for Items


Please note that only basic editing functionality for prices is supported. As of version 7.1, the following restrictions exist:

- Price tiers are not handled correctly, ie. price list doesn't automatically show all available price tiers as columns like in Product 360 Desktop. Hence, only a single price tier is supported.
- Custom fields cannot be edited due to a bug.

Example Screen:

Item "Article_92940804911123"

Parent product: "Product2G_92940804911119"



Item no.:
Article_92940804911123

Status:
01 New

Header	Grouped Logical Keys	Logistic Extensions	Article Logistic Extensions	Preview	Article Retail Prices	Text	Prices	Media	C																				
<div> <div> <div>+</div> <div>⚙</div> <div>×</div> </div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Customer</th> <th>Currency</th> <th>Price type</th> <th>Valid in region</th> <th>Price</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><Public></td> <td>Euro</td> <td>Net customer price</td> <td>Germany</td> <td>500.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td><Public></td> <td>Euro</td> <td>Non-binding price recommendation</td> <td>Germany</td> <td>222.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Heiler Product Manager</td> <td>Euro</td> <td>Net customer price</td> <td>Germany</td> <td>753.00</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>										Customer	Currency	Price type	Valid in region	Price	<Public>	Euro	Net customer price	Germany	500.00	<Public>	Euro	Non-binding price recommendation	Germany	222.00	Heiler Product Manager	Euro	Net customer price	Germany	753.00
Customer	Currency	Price type	Valid in region	Price																									
<Public>	Euro	Net customer price	Germany	500.00																									
<Public>	Euro	Non-binding price recommendation	Germany	222.00																									
Heiler Product Manager	Euro	Net customer price	Germany	753.00																									

Definition (article.detailtab.xml):

```
<definition id="sdk.salesPricesEditable" rootEntity="Article" i18NKey="Article Retail Prices" position="15">
  <column>
    <tableGroup>
      <actionPanel>
        <actionButton action="create"/>
        <actionButton action="delete"/>
        <actionButton action="edit"/>
        <fieldFormGroup subEntityId="ArticlePriceValueSales">
          <field identifier="ArticlePriceSales.BuyerId"/>
          <field identifier="ArticlePriceSales.Currency"/>
          <field identifier="ArticlePriceSales.PriceType"/>
          <field identifier="ArticlePriceSales.Territory"/>
          <field identifier="ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount"/>
        </fieldFormGroup>
      </actionPanel>
      <tableDefinition rootEntity="ArticlePriceSales">
        <field identifier="ArticlePriceSales.BuyerId"/>
        <field identifier="ArticlePriceSales.Currency"/>
        <field identifier="ArticlePriceSales.PriceType"/>
        <field identifier="ArticlePriceSales.Territory"/>
        <field identifier="ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount" caption="Price"/>
      </tableDefinition>
    </tableGroup>
  </column>
</definition>
```


Display Transition Fields in Detail Tab Lists, e.g. Short Description for References

Lists within detail tabs also support transition fields. This is especially useful for the list of referenced items.

Example:

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"

Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55' LED", 2 more item(s)



Product no.:
Product2G_1785707347351
8

Status:
01 New

Reference type	Referenced object type	Referenced object number	Number	Sequence	Short description
Accessories	Product	100	1	5	
Accessories	Item	110	1	3	

This example requires to create two new transition fields in repository (3 in case of 3-tier product paradigm). Please see the screen for details.

Repository application

File Edit Repository editor Window Help

Repository.repository

type filter text

- P2I Ref Short Description
- P2P Ref Short Description
- P2V Ref Short Description
- Quality message (Rule selectable)
- Quality message (Rule selectable)
- Quality message (Rule selectable)

Selected object: P2I Ref Short Description

Property	Value
Active	true
Identifier	refShortDesc
Name	P2I Ref Short Description
Source Field	Product2G2ArticleReference.ReferencedArticle
Target Field	ArticleLang.DescriptionShort
Visible	true

Repository application

File Edit Repository editor Window Help

Repository.repository

type filter text

- P2I Ref Short Description
- P2P Ref Short Description
- P2V Ref Short Description
- Quality message (Rule selectable)
- Quality message (Rule selectable)
- Quality message (Rule selectable)

Selected object: P2P Ref Short Description

Property	Value
Active	true
Identifier	refShortDesc
Name	P2P Ref Short Description
Source Field	Product2GReference.ReferencedProduct2G
Target Field	Product2GLang.DescriptionShort
Visible	true

product.references.listmodel.xml

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<tableDefinitions xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="TableDefinitions.xsd">

  <definition rootEntity="Product2GReference">
    <field identifier="Product2GReference.Type"/>
    <field identifier="Product2GReference.ReferencedEntityId"/>
    <field identifier="Product2GReference.ReferencedProductNo"/>
    <field identifier="Product2GReference.Quantity"/>
    <field identifier="Product2GReference.DisplayOrder"/>

    <field identifier="Product2GReference.ReferencedProduct2G" >
      <transitionField identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" >
        <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="9"/>
      </transitionField>
    </field>

  </definition>

  <definition rootEntity="Product2G2ArticleReference">
    <field identifier="Product2G2ArticleReference.Type"/>
    <field identifier="Product2G2ArticleReference.ReferencedEntityId"/>
    <field identifier="Product2G2ArticleReference.ReferencedProductNo"/>
    <field identifier="Product2G2ArticleReference.Quantity"/>
    <field identifier="Product2G2ArticleReference.DisplayOrder"/>

    <field identifier="Product2G2ArticleReference.ReferencedArticle" >
      <transitionField identifier="ArticleLang.DescriptionShort" >
        <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="9"/>
      </transitionField>
    </field>

  </definition>

</tableDefinitions>

```



Magic around references

Please note that the handling of the listmodel definitions for references is special. In the Product 360 datamodel, links to each entity (Item, Product, Variant) are represented in a separate sub entity. Thus the file *.references.listmodel.xml contains 2 definitions (3 if variants are used, too). At runtime all these definitions are merged into a single table. That means, that the fields of the definitions must be matching (reference the same field type).

If you want to add another field, this needs to be done in all definitions at the same position. See DescriptionShort field in the above example.

Single Logical Key Selector for Multiple Subentities

Use Case:

In some cases, multiple fields from different sub entities should be displayed on a single detail tab. If these fields belong to the same entityType, the user wants to select the logical key only once instead of multiple times. This also makes sense, if different subentities share the same logical key, e.g. a qualification by language.


Per default, logical key selectors are generated per fieldFormGroup. Fields from different subEntities need to be grouped in separate fieldFormGroups. Using the syntax "enumGrouping" allows to extract the logical key selector from the fieldFormGroup level to the column level.

Example:

Two price values from ArticlePriceValuePurchase and ArticlePriceValueSales subentity with shared Currency selector:

Item "Article_17857073473522 - 55' LED"

> Parent product: "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat screen TV"



Item no.: Article_17857073473522

Status: 03 Selling prices OK

Header

Grouped Logical Keys

Logistic Extensions

Article Logistic Extensions

Preview

Currencies

Euro

Net list Purchase Price:

450.00

Net Customer Selling Price:

499.00

article.detailtab.xml:

```

<definition debugId="sdk.enumGrouping" i18NKey="Grouped Logical Keys" rootEntity="Article" position="11">
  <column>
    <enumGrouping enumIdentifier="Enum.Currency" selectable="true"/>
    <fieldGroup subEntityId="ArticlePriceValuePurchase" displaySectionWidget="true">
      <field identifier="ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount" caption="Net list Purchase Price" />

      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.PartyMS" hidden="true" value="&lt;Main
supplier&gt;"/>

      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Territory" hidden="true" value="Germany"/>
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.ValidAt" hidden="true" value="now"/>
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceValueType.LK.LowerBound" hidden="true" value="1"/>

      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Type" value="1" hidden="true"/>
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Currency" value="EUR" selectable="true"/>
    </fieldGroup>
    <fieldGroup subEntityId="ArticlePriceValueSales" displaySectionWidget="true">
      <field identifier="ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount" caption="Net Customer Selling Price" />

      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.PartyMS" hidden="true" value="&lt;Public&gt;"/>
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Territory" hidden="true" value="Germany"/>
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.ValidAt" hidden="true" value="now"/>
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceValueType.LK.LowerBound" hidden="true" value="1"/>

      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Type" value="3" hidden="true"/>
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticlePriceType.LK.Currency" value="EUR" selectable="true"/>
    </fieldGroup>
  </column>
</definition>


```

List of all references to items, but not to other entities (with optional filter)

Shows a list of all references to other items together with GTIN and ShortDescription using transition fields.

Example Screen:

Item "Article_17857073473522 - 55' LED"
Parent product: "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat Screen TV"



Item no.:
Article_17857073473522
Status:
03 Selling prices OK

Header
Grouped Logical Keys
References to Items
Logistic Extensions
Article Logistic Extensions
Preview

Reference type ▲	Referenced object number	Number	Sequence	GTIN	Short desc
Accessories	200	1	5		
Component	1000	1			
Other reference	1	1	10		

article.detailtab.xml:

```

<definition i18NKey="References to Items" position="11" rootEntity="Article">
  <column>
    <tableGroup>
      <actionPanel>
        <actionButton action="create" />
        <actionButton action="edit" />
        <actionButton action="delete" />
        <fieldFormGroup subEntityId="ArticleReference">
          <field identifier="ArticleReference.Type"/>
          <field identifier="ArticleReference.ReferencedSupplierAid" />
          <field identifier="ArticleReference.Quantity" />
          <field identifier="ArticleReference.DisplayOrder" />
        </fieldFormGroup>
      </actionPanel>
      <tableDefinition rootEntity="ArticleReference">
        <field identifier="ArticleReference.Type"/>
        <field identifier="ArticleReference.ReferencedSupplierAid" />
        <field identifier="ArticleReference.Quantity" />
        <field identifier="ArticleReference.DisplayOrder" />
        <field identifier="ArticleReference.ReferencedArticle">
          <transitionField identifier="Article.EAN" />
        </field>
        <field identifier="ArticleReference.ReferencedArticle">
          <transitionField identifier="ArticleLang.DescriptionShort" />
        </field>
      </tableDefinition>
    </tableGroup>
  </column>
</definition>

```

List of references to products, that is additionally filtered to show only references of type "accessories":

Example Screen:

Product "Product2G_17857073473518 - Flat Screen TV"

Items of the product: "Article_17857073473522 - 55" LED", 2 more item(s)

Thumbnail: No content

Product no.: Product2G_17857073473518

Last changed by: Administrator

Text translations fixed Purchase Prices All Text translations Accessories of the product Preview Text Pr < >

Reference type ▲	Referenced object number	Number	Sequence	GTIN	Short desc
Accessories	100	1	5		

product.detailtab.xml:

```

<definition i18NKey="Accessories of the product" position="13" rootEntity="Article">
  <column>
    <tableGroup>
      <actionPanel>

```



```

        <actionButton action="create" />
        <actionButton action="edit" />
        <actionButton action="delete" />
        <fieldFormGroup subEntityId="Article2Product2GReference">
        <field identifier="Article2Product2GReference.Type"/>
        <field identifier="Article2Product2GReference.ReferencedSupplierAid"/>
        <field identifier="Article2Product2GReference.Quantity"/>
        <field identifier="Article2Product2GReference.DisplayOrder"/>
        </fieldFormGroup>
    </actionPanel>
    <tableDefinition rootEntity="Article2Product2GReference">
    <field identifier="Article2Product2GReference.Type"/>
    <field identifier="Article2Product2GReference.ReferencedSupplierAid"/>
    <field identifier="Article2Product2GReference.Quantity"/>
    <field identifier="Article2Product2GReference.DisplayOrder"/>
    <field identifier="ArticleReference.ReferencedArticle">
        <transitionField identifier="Article.EAN"/>
    </field>
    <field identifier="ArticleReference.ReferencedArticle">
        <transitionField identifier="ArticleLang.DescriptionShort"/>
    </field>
    </tableDefinition>
    <logicalKey identifier="ArticleReferenceType.LK.ReferenceType" selectable="false"
hidden="true" value="accessories"/>
    </tableGroup>
</column>
</definition>

```

6.5.9 Action menu definition examples

Overview

With XML configuration for action menus it is possible to specify the order and visibility of list action menus. This configuration is used as default for all users, however, users can override the configuration in Product 360 Web UI.

The following files define the menus for each root entity:

- article.list.actionmenu.xml
- product.list.actionmenu.xml
- variant.list.actionmenu.xml
- structure.list.actionmenu.xml
- task.list.actionmenu.xml

- article.fulltextsearch.list.actionmenu.xml
- variant.fulltextsearch.list.actionmenu.xml
- product.fulltextsearch.list.actionmenu.xml

Configure menu settings

Please select actions to be visible in the current menu and your favorite actions to be displayed to the left of the action menu button.

▼ Maintain

Create product

✓

★

Delete product

✓

★

Clone product

✓

★

Classify product

✓

★

▼ Tasks

Create task

✓

★

Add to existing task

✓

★

▼ Data

Import Data

✓

★

Export selected rows

✓

★

Execute data quality rules

✓

★

▼ Navigation

To higher-level object

✓

★

Show items

✓

★

▼ More Actions

Search and Replace

✓

★

Reset
OK
Cancel

Possible customizations

1. Change groups order
2. Change items order inside group
3. Move items to other group

4. Move item inside other item
5. Remove item
6. Remove group
7. Create new group
8. Change default visibility of item
9. Change if item in favorite area by default
10. Change captions for groups and items (in resource bundle files or directly in xml by providing explicit value)

Limitations

Do not change menu item identifiers as by them system locates concrete classes. Obviously it's impossible to create new menu item by just adding new line in xml file. However you can contribute new menu items programatically using the SDK.

Example definition

product.list.actionmenu.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<menuDefinition xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="MenuDefinition.xsd">
  <menuGroup identifier="menu.item.group.maintain" i18NKey="%web.common.menu.item.group.maintain">
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.product.action.clone" i18NKey="%web.client.product.clone" favorite="false"
visible="true"/>
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.product.action.delete" i18NKey="%web.client.product.delete" favorite="false"
visible="true"/>
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.product.action.create" i18NKey="%web.client.product.create" favorite="true"
visible="true"/>
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.product.action.classify" i18NKey="%web.product.classification.menu" favorite="false"
visible="true"/>
  </menuGroup>
  <menuGroup identifier="menu.item.group.task" i18NKey="%web.task.menu.item.group.task">
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.task.action.create" i18NKey="%web.client.task.create" favorite="false"
visible="true"/>
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.task.action.add" i18NKey="%web.client.task.add" favorite="false" visible="true"/>
  </menuGroup>
  <menuGroup identifier="menu.item.group.data" i18NKey="%web.common.menu.item.group.data">
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.product.dataquality.action.execute" i18NKey="%web.quality.menu.execute"
favorite="false" visible="true"/>
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.product.action.directexport" i18NKey="%export.exportHint" favorite="false"
visible="true"/>
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.product.action.import" i18NKey="%web.import.list.menu" favorite="false"
visible="true"/>
  </menuGroup>
  <menuGroup identifier="menu.item.group.navigation" i18NKey="%web.common.menu.item.group.navigation">
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.product.back" i18NKey="%web.client.button.back.parent" favorite="false"
visible="true"/>
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.product.drilldown" i18NKey="%web.client.product.item.drilldown" favorite="true"
visible="true"/>
  </menuGroup>
  <menuGroup identifier="menu.item.group.default" i18NKey="%web.common.menu.item.group.default">
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.product.action.findandreplace" i18NKey="%web.client.findandreplace.dialog.title"
favorite="false" visible="true"/>
  </menuGroup>
  <menuGroup identifier="menu.item.group.actionconfig" i18NKey="%web.client.actionconfig.menu.group">
    <menuItem identifier="menu.item.product.action.actionconfig" favorite="false" visible="true"/>
  </menuGroup>
</menuDefinition>
```

6.6 Task UI and Dashboard configuration

6.6.1 Introduction

Flexible UIs are used in Product 360 for two purposes:

- Defining *dashboards* that offer a tailored overview of the Product 360 data from which the user can switch to relevant details easily.
- Defining *task UIs* which help the user to focus on just the data and actions that are needed to accomplish an assigned task.

Flexible UIs are defined in an XML based specification language. The root tag is `flexUi`. It has a single attribute: `version`. The version is currently fixed at `1.0.0`. It may be increased in future releases if/when substantial new features are added to the specification language.

The rest of this document describes the concepts and details used in flexible UI templates.

6.6.2 Layout

Flexible UIs consist of *components*. These components need to be arranged in a specific way which is the role of the `layout` tag. It is structured as follows:

- The layout type is specified as an attribute of the `layout` tag. Different layout types have different approaches for arranging the components. As of now only one layout type (`grid`) is supported.
- A layout type may support a number of parameters to finetune its behaviour. These parameters are supplied via `parameter` tags with `key` and `value` attributes, where the `key` specifies the parameter name.
- One or more components are specified next. They will be arranged on the screen per the rules of the layout type.
- Each component can carry additional parameters relating to the layout to further finetune the appearance. These parameters are nested within a `layoutData` tag to differentiate them from parameters of the component itself.

Here is the definition of a simple flexible UI to show the basic structure:

Hello world

```
<flexUi version="1.0.0">
  <layout type="grid">

    <!-- these parameters specify the details for the "grid" layout used here -->
    <parameter key="columns" value="2"/>
    <parameter key="rows" value="1"/>

    <component type="messageBox" identifier="message1" i18NKey="Greetings">

      <layoutData>
        <!-- this area specifies layout details for this component -->
        <parameter key="colSpan" value="2"/>
      </layoutData>
      <!-- this is a parameter specific to the functionality of the individual component -->
      <parameter key="message" value="Hello, world!"/>

    </component>

  </layout>
</flexUi>
```

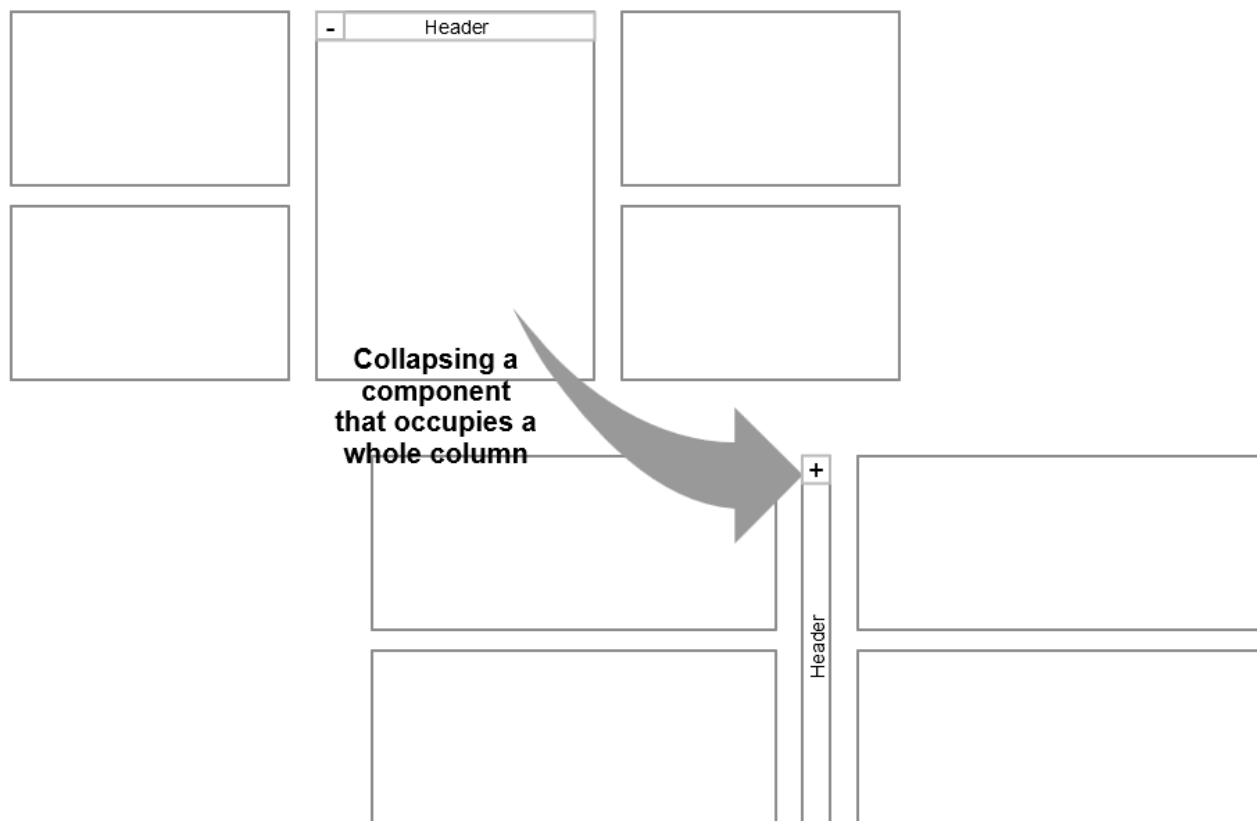
Grid layout

In this type of layout the available space for the UI is divided into cells of a grid. Similar to HTML tables, there are a number of columns and rows which are defined at the layout level. Each component can occupy several adjacent cells in this grid.

Components are added to the grid in the sequence they appear in the XML. For each component the layout algorithm looks for free space of the appropriate size, going from left to right and top to bottom, i.e. the first row is filled as much as possible, skipping to the next row when the next component would not fit any more in the current row. Cells that remain unoccupied may be filled with a subsequent component if it fits, meaning that the layout tries to fill out empty spots as soon as possible.

Collapsing components

With collapsible components the user can temporarily minimize information that is not needed and use the additional space to increase the size of other components. In general a component can only be collapsible if it occupies the full width or the full height of the UI. Through this restriction the collapsing behaviour is working in a way that is intuitive for the user: a whole column (or a whole row) is collapsed and all other columns (rows) are proportionally increased in size. If it were possible to minimize a component that only occupies part of the width/height of the UI then the components would have to be rearranged on the fly to fill out the empty space, making it harder for the user to relocate any individual components.




Horizontal collapsing

When a component occupying a whole column is marked as collapsible it gets a button added in the top left of its header. Depending on the state the button displays a minus sign for collapsing or a plus sign for expanding the component. In collapsed mode the width of the component is reduced to the width of the button and the component title is displayed in a banner below the button rotated 90 degrees to the left.

Vertical collapsing

When a component occupying a whole row is marked as collapsible it gets a button added in the top left of its header. The button displays a triangle pointing right in collapsed state and pointing down in expanded state. When collapsed the component is reduced to its header.

For a finer control of the collapsed state of a subgroup of components see the `group` component below.

 Note that the goal of collapsing is to have more space for other components. Therefore a component can only be collapsed if some other component(s) remain visible. To enforce this, the button for collapsing a component is hidden if it is the only component to be fully visible currently.

Type: `grid`

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Layout parameter (LP) Component layout data parameter (CLP)	Example values	Description
<code>columns</code>	0	LP	1 (default)	Specifies the number of columns in the grid.
<code>rows</code>	0	LP	1 (default)	Specifies the number of rows in the grid.
<code>columnWidth</code>	0	LP	<i>css width in pixels (like "300px")</i>	Cell width. By default all available width is equally divided between all cells.
<code>rowHeight</code>	0	LP	<i>css height in pixels (like "300px")</i>	Cell height. By default all available height is equally divided between all cells.
<code>spacingSize</code>	0	LP	<i>css size in pixels (like "25px")</i>	If <code>columnWidth</code> or <code>rowHeight</code> are defined the desired spacing between cells needs to be specified as well (default 6px).
<code>colSpan</code>	0	CLP	1 (default)	Number of cells occupied by component in horizontal direction.
<code>rowSpan</code>	0	CLP	1 (default)	Number of cells occupied by component in vertical direction.
<code>collapsible</code>	0	CLP	<i>true</i> <i>false</i> (default)	Specifies whether the component should be collapsible in the UI.
<code>collapsed</code>	0	CLP	<i>true</i> (default) <i>false</i>	Specifies whether the component should be collapsed initially. Only applies if <code>collapsible</code> is set to true.

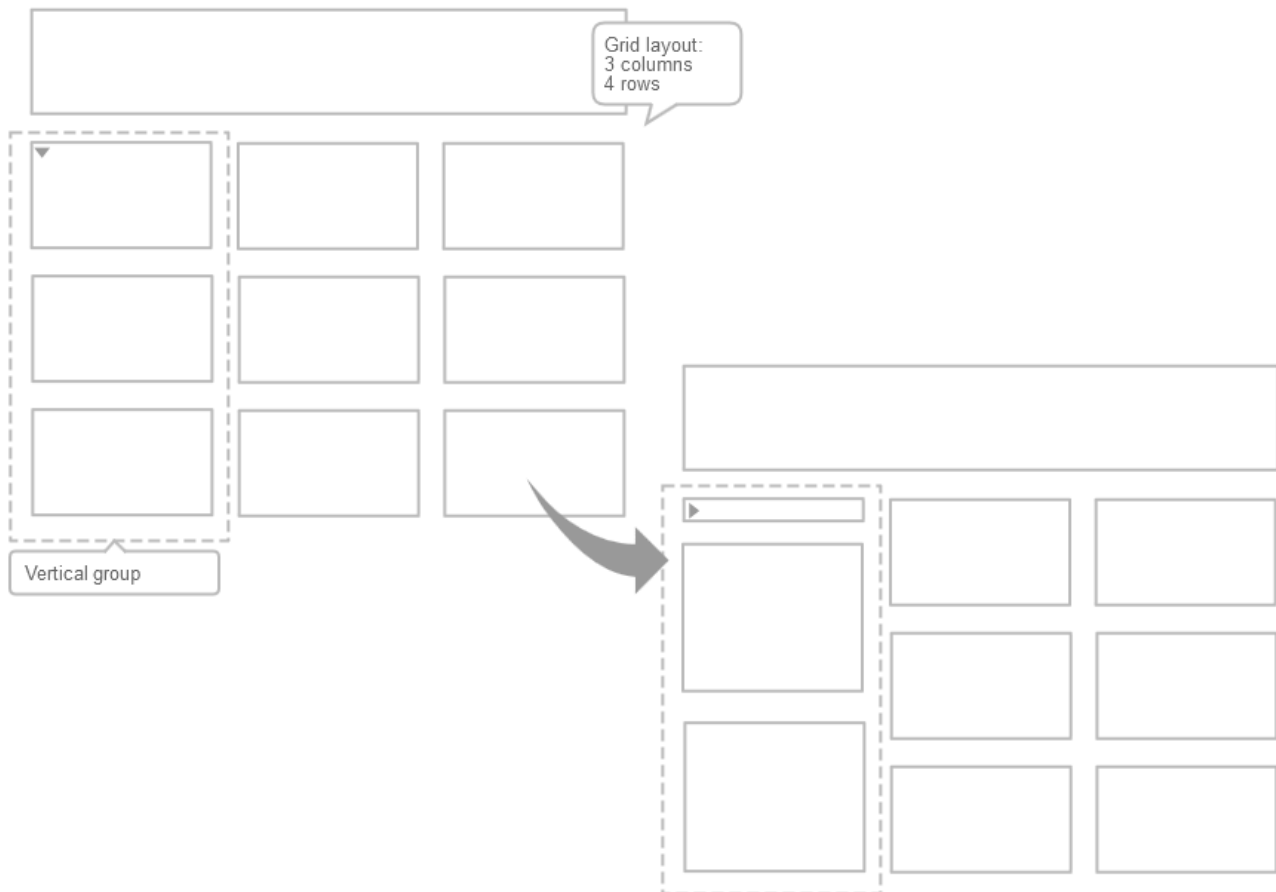
Grouping components

With the `group` component it is possible to occupy an area in the layout and then place a number of nested components into this area. In this way it is possible to create layouts that break up the rigid structure of the grid. For example a group can occupy 4 columns and then place 5 components in this area that share this space equally. Using size ratios for the individual

components the structure of the UI can deviate from the enclosing layout even more.

The second feature of groups is that they manage the collapsible behaviour locally between the nested components.

⚠ Use the flexibility of the group component carefully. The overall UI should still present a clear structure to the user.



From the perspective of the enclosing layout the group component acts like a single component and it carries the layout data for the whole group (however groups do not support the collapsible/collapsed parameters, i.e. a group as a whole cannot be collapsed within its layout). The layoutData parameters that can be set for each nested component are defined by the group component - see below.

Tag: group

Parameter name	Mandatory Optional	Group parameter (GP) Component layout data parameter (CLP)	Example values	Description
direction	O	GP	<i>horizontal</i> (default) <i>vertical</i>	Direction for placing the child components.
collapsible	O	CLP	<i>true</i> (default) <i>false</i>	Specifies whether the component should be collapsible in the UI. The direction of collapsing is defined by the direction of the group.
collapsed	O	CLP	<i>true</i> (default) <i>false</i>	Specifies whether the component should be collapsed initially.
sizeRatio	O	CLP	1 (default)	Defines the relative amount of space (in the direction of the group) the component will be assigned. By default all components have ratio 1 and the space will be distributed equally. With three components and ratios set to 1, 2, and 1, the middle component will get half the space while the others get a quarter each. If the middle component is collapsed the available space is split equally between the other two as both have the same ratio.

6.6.3 Data Sources

A data source can be used to retrieve a set of entity items (e.g. articles or products). The underlying mechanism used for providing the data set is dependant on the data source type. Each data source is defined using a common XML structure. Data source definitions appear nested in component instance definitions. The respective component type specifies if and how many data sources it supports and what identifiers those data sources should have.

Explicit data sources are mostly used in dashboard components. Within the flexible task UI there is always an implicit data source consisting of the entity items attached to the task.

The most common starting points for specifying sets of entity items in Product 360 are:

- Catalogs - all the items of either the master catalog or a supplier catalog
- Assortments - all the items within an assortment
- Structures - items that have been classified in a specific structure system to any structure group or items classified to a specific structure group


=> these are covered by the entity report based data source types, see examples below

- User defined saved searches with flexible criteria for defining a set of items

=> there is a separate data source type for saved searches, see below

- Ad hoc searches using a detailed search expression

=> this is implemented by a special entity report called "bySearch" and is available through the "Report by alias" data source type, see example below. The expression syntax is documented under "REST Search Query Language".

Field / subelement	Description
type	This specifies the type of the data source. See the entries below for possible values.
identifier	Unique name within the scope of the data source definition. For example a specific component may support multiple data source definitions and the identifier can be used to select the right one.
ref	Reference that is used to identify the underlying instance that will provide the data. For example the unique identifier of an entity report if the underlying mechanism is report based.
entity	The entity of the items that are provided. This only needs to be specified for some data source types where the "ref" field on its own is not unique.
parameter	<p>Key / value pairs providing parameters for the underlying mechanism. For example in case of reports these pairs are matched to parameters defined in the actual report. The following entry specifies that the parameter "catalog" should be set to "Apparel":</p> <pre><parameter key="catalog" value="Apparel" /></pre> <p>Additionally a special suffix <code>.editable</code> is recognized in the parameter key. The value is expected to be a boolean (true/false) and it specifies whether the related parameter (same key without the suffix) is made available to the user so he/she can choose the actual value on the fly via a combo box. Here is an example:</p> <pre><parameter key="catalog" value="Apparel" /> <parameter key="catalog.editable" value="true" /></pre> <p> Note that not all components supporting data sources also support interactive choice of data source parameters. Also, the actual data source must provide an enumeration for the parameter to choose values from. The value provided in the XML ("Apparel") must be from this enumeration and will be preselected in the combo box. If it is not part of the enumeration it will be ignored and the selection will be empty initially.</p> <p>Finally, if the key/value pair for the parameter is omitted, i.e. only the <code>.editable</code> entry for it is present, then the parameter will be set to a default value provided by the underlying data source implementation (e.g. entity reports may have defaults for their parameters defined). If no such default value is provided then the selection is left empty initially.</p>

Report by alias

This type of data source represents an entity report that has been contributed to Product 360 via the extension mechanism and is available via the REST interface of the Product 360 server. The REST interface supports browsing for available reports and parameters. For example the available reports for returning a set of articles can be viewed at <http://<pim.server>:1501/rest/V1.0/list/Article/info>. Clicking on the report name provides the list of parameters that can be used.

Field/ subelement	Value	Description
type	reportByAlias	
ref	e.g. byStructureGroup	Has to match the "alias" of an entity report that has been contributed to the Product 360 installation via the Eclipse extension point.
entity	e.g. Article	Has to match the "item-entity" attribute of the same entity report.
parameter	e.g. key="catalog" value="Apparel"	Specifies a value that will be passed to the report before execution. The "key" has to match either the "id" or the "alias" field of a report parameter as defined in the Eclipse extension.

Report-by-alias data source examples

```

<!-- all products in the master catalog -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportByAlias" ref="byCatalog" entity="Product2G" />

<!-- all articles in a supplier catalog -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportByAlias" ref="byCatalog" entity="Article" >
  <parameter key="catalog" value="Apparel"/>
</dataSource>

<!-- all articles in a supplier catalog - catalog can be selected interactively -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportByAlias" ref="byCatalog" entity="Article" >
  <parameter key="catalog" value="Apparel"/>
  <parameter key="catalog.editable" value="true"/>
</dataSource>

<!-- all articles in a catalog - catalog can be selected interactively and defaults to master catalog -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportByAlias" ref="byCatalog" entity="Article" >
  <parameter key="catalog.editable" value="true"/>
</dataSource>

<!-- all articles in an assortment - note there is an issue currently for referencing assortments by name, -->
<!-- instead the internal ID has to be used, it can be retrieved through the "list" REST API -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportByAlias" ref="byAssortment" entity="Article" >
  <parameter key="assortment" value="33"/>
</dataSource>

<!-- all articles from master catalog classified in a structure system -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportByAlias" ref="classifiedBy" entity="Article" >
  <parameter key="structure" value="Heiler Standard"/>
</dataSource>

<!-- all articles from supplier catalog classified in a structure system -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportByAlias" ref="classifiedBy" entity="Article" >
  <parameter key="structure" value="Heiler Standard"/>
  <parameter key="catalog" value="Apparel"/>
</dataSource>

<!-- all articles from master catalog classified in a structure group -->

```

```

<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportByAlias" ref="byStructureGroup" entity="Article" >
  <parameter key="structureGroup" value="'GROUP_1'@'HeilerStandard'"/>
</dataSource>

<!-- add hoc search - all articles in a specific segment and with a price in a specific price range, -->
<!-- note that the 'less than' sign had to be encoded as it is not allowed in XML attribute values -->
<!-- Note that most field qualifications use the default from the repository. They could be of course -->
<!-- also specified directly here - e.g. looking at the segment in German and comparing against the -->
<!-- prices in Euro in Germany, etc. -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportByAlias" ref="bySearch" entity="Article" >
  <parameter key="query" value="ArticleLang.Segment(${Default}) = Segment01 and ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount(${Default},
${Default},${Default},${Default},${Default},1.0) > 60 and ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount(${Default},${Default},${Default},
${Default},${Default},1.0) &lt; 90"/>
</dataSource>

```

Report by ID

This type of data source also represents an entity report that has been contributed to Product 360 via the extension mechanism. The only difference is that it can also be used to access reports that have not been made available via the REST interface.

Field/ subelement	Value	Description
type	reportById	
ref	e.g. <i>com.heiler.ppm.article.core.ArticlesOfStructureGroup</i>	Has to match the "id" of an entity report that has been contributed to the Product 360 installation via the Eclipse extension point.
parameter	e.g. <i>key="catalog"</i> <i>value="Apparel"</i>	Specifies a value that will be passed to the report before execution. The "key" has to match either the "id" or the "alias" field of a report parameter as defined in the contribution to the Eclipse extension point.

Report-by-ID data source examples

```

<!-- ***** Simple data source without parameters -->
<!-- All articles in the master catalog -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.article.core.ArticlesOfMasterCatalog" />

<!-- ***** Data sources with parameters -->

<!-- All articles of a supplier catalog -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.article.core.ArticlesOfSupplierCatalog">
  <parameter key="SupplierCatalog" value="Apparel" />
</dataSource>

<!-- All articles of an assortment -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.article.assortment.core.ArticlesOfAssortment">
  <parameter key="Assortment" value="MyAssortment" />
</dataSource>

<!-- All articles from master catalog classified within a structure system -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.article.core.SupplierArticlesClassifiedTo">

```

```

<parameter key="Structure" value="HeilerStandard" />
</dataSource>

<!-- All articles from master catalog classified to a specific structure group -->
<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.article.core.ArticlesOfStrucureGroup">
  <parameter key="StructureGroupID" value="'GROUP_1'@'HeilerStandard'" />
</dataSource>

<!-- ***** data source with multiple parameters -->

<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.article.core.MasterArticlesClassifiedTo">
  <parameter key="Catalog" value="1" />
  <parameter key="Structure" value="HeilerStandard" />
</dataSource>

<!-- ***** data source with an editable parameter -->

<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.article.core.MasterArticlesClassifiedTo">
  <parameter key="Catalog" value="1" />
  <parameter key="Catalog.editable" value="true" />
  <parameter key="Structure" value="HeilerStandard" />
</dataSource>

```

Saved searches

Within the rich client users can build search expressions and store them as saved searches for later use in either the rich or the web client. This type of data source enables access to such saved searches in flexible UIs.

Note that neither specifying parameter values nor editing of parameter values is supported. Parameter values for a saved search should be provided in Product 360 Desktop when it is created.

Field/sublement	Value	Description
type	savedSearch	
ref	e.g. <i>SearchName</i>	Has to match the name of the saved search.
entity	e.g. <i>Article</i>	Has to match the "item-entity" attribute of the saved query.

Saved search data source example

```

<dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="savedSearch" ref="AllItemsEditedByMe" entity="Article" />

```

6.6.4 Components

A component displays some specific information within a flexible UI and may also offer some actions to work with the displayed data. Most components are defined using the `component` tag. In general the structure of a component definition is as follows.

Setting	Location	Description
type	attribute	Defines what type of component this is. The following chapters provide a list of all available component types.

Setting	Location	Description
identifier	attribute	Defines a unique name for the component in the scope of this flexible UI.
i18NKey	attribute	Provides the title for the component which will be displayed in its header. The title is rendered as provided, localization via properties files is not supported in the initial release.
layoutData	nested tag	Specifies any layout specific parameters for this component - see section on layout at the beginning of this page.
dataSource	nested tags	Specifies any data source parameters that are needed/supported by the component type. See section for specific component for details.
parameter	nested tags	Specifies any parameters that are needed/supported by the component type. See section for specific component for details.

There are a few exceptions to this:

- The group component has its own tag and is not really a component in its own right. As described [above](#) it combines multiple components for layout purposes. Groups only have their own tag so no type attribute is needed. There is also no identifier, no header and no nested data sources. Layout data and nested parameters are supported.
- The form component and the list component have specialized content defining in detail which Product 360 data fields are displayed.

Note that all following examples of component definitions omit the `layoutData` tag. See the [section on layouts](#) on how to fine-tune the appearance of each component.

6.6.5 Dashboard components

Dashboards generally do not require any global data source in contrast to flexible task UI components which may rely on the data source implicitly defined by the task that is displayed. All dashboard components may also be used in task UI templates.

Message box component

Displays a fixed message.

Type: `messageBox`

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
message	M	The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.	Specifies the text that will be displayed.

Message box example

```
<component type="messageBox" identifier="message1" i18NKey="Greetings">
  <parameter key="message" value="Hello, world!"/>
</component>
```

System message component

Displays active system messages. If the user has appropriate permissions it also supports adding new system messages.

Type: systemMessage

System message example

```
<component type="systemMessage" identifier="system1" i18NKey="System messages">
</component>
```

iFrame component

Displays an external web page on the dashboard within a limited area occupied by the component. Note that no content will be displayed if the publisher of the external page does not allow it to be displayed in a frame.

Type: iframe

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
url	M	https://www.google.com/maps/embed?pb=!1m18!1m12!1m3!1d3164.8565...14244 https://www.youtube.com/embed/UJW0VDJoAas	Specifies the URL for the web page that will be displayed.

iFrame example

```
<component type="iframe" identifier="googlemaps" i18NKey="Informatica Headquarters">
  <parameter key="url" value="https://www.google.com/maps/embed?pb=!1m14!1m8!1m3!1d12659.780154317712!2d-122.19728541031158!3d37.509214421263046!3m2!1i1024!2i768!4f13.1!3m3!1m2!1s0x808fa2f5dfdc5097%3A0xc479e59839708591!2sInformatica+Corporation!5e0!3m2!1sde!2sde!4v1427979234929" />
</component>
```

Barchart component

Displays a horizontal barchart that shows the distribution of values for a specified field in the specified set of data. The set is specified by an embedded data source. The field is specified using the Service API syntax for Product 360 fields and has to match the type of entity items that are provided by the data source (for instance it makes no sense to group the values of a product specific field when the underlying data is a set of articles).

Throughout the data set the occurrence of each value is counted and displayed as a bar with the bar label being the value and the bar length being in proportion to the number of occurrences of this value. For example if the field that is looked at is the "segment" and there are 255 articles in the data source that have "Consumer Electronics" as the value for the "segment field", then there will be a bar labelled "Consumer Electronics" and the size of the bar will reflect the number 255.


Regarding the bar sizes, the longest bar (i.e. largest occurrence count) will occupy the available space horizontally and the other bars will be drawn in proportion to it.



By clicking on a bar the user can switch to a table view of the items that are represented by that bar.

Type: barchart

Data source name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Description
dataSet	M	Specifies the data set. The barchart component supports combo boxes for editable data source parameters (see above).

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
groupingField	M	Article.CurrentStatus Product2GLang.Segment(de_DE) Article.Status->QualityStatusSummary.Status({Default})	Specifies a Product 360 field in Service API syntax. The entity holding this field must match the entities provided by the dataSet data source. If the path to the subentity holding the field requires qualifications they are provided in a comma separated list at the end of the field name. If any of the qualifications have default definitions in the repository then those can be used by providing the special string "\${Default}" instead of an actual value for the qualification.
groupingField.lkn.editable	O	true false (default)	Specifies whether the n th (starting at 0) qualification of the field should be made available as a drop down box in the UI so the user can switch between e.g. the segment field in English or German on the fly. By default no combo boxes for qualifications are displayed.  Note that for this to work the respective Product 360 qualification field has to have an enumeration assigned to it.
numValueBuckets	O	10 5	For some fields it does not make sense to count the appearance of each individual value as there would be too many bars (e.g. item prices). For such fields the values can be split into buckets and all values in a bucket are counted together (e.g. all item prices between 50 and 100). Currently this behaviour is only available for all fields of type BigDecimal and Long. The buckets are defined by taking into account the minimum and maximum values of the data set. Furthermore the bucket boundaries are also aligned to a well readable raster e.g. 1, 2.5, 5, 7.5, 10, ... The granularity of the chosen raster depends on the distance between min and max and also on the number of buckets to create as specified by this parameter. The actual number of created buckets may be less than specified due to the imposed raster. The lowest bucket always contains the minimum and the highest always contains the maximum value.

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(p tional)	Example values	Description
show Blank Entries	0	true (default) false	<p>Specifies whether there should also be bars of size zero for values that were not present in the data set but within the range of expected values. This of course only works if there is a set of expected values for the field specified as <i>groupingField</i> - which is the case if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ the field type is boolean (true, false) ▪ the field type is tri-state boolean (true, false, unknown) ▪ the field has an enumeration assigned to it in the Product 360 repository ▪ the field type is BigDecimal or Long and numValueBuckets has been specified ▪ the field includes the BPM workflow as one its qualifiers and it is marked in the Product 360 repository - as a result the possible status values of the respective workflow are then used as expected values
show Null Values	0	true (default) false	<p>Specifies whether the item count for items with missing/null values should be shown as a separate bar labelled "<No input>" or not.</p> <p>Note that pointers to deleted data are also considered to be null values. For instance an article keeps record of the user that created it. If that user has been marked as deleted in the meantime, this field will be treated as missing/null.</p>

Parameter name	Mandatory (Optional)	Example values	Description
barChartColor	0	red, blue, green, black #000000 (black), #399bf9 (blue) rbg(255, 0, 255) (magenta) Default color is the theme-based color described in dashboard.css in style class: .hpmw-horizontal-barchart-widget	<p>Specifies the color of the bars. Valid values are either CSS standard color names like red, blue, green, black. The CSS standard colors are defined here: http://www.w3.org/TR/CSS21/syndata.html#value-def-color.</p> <p>Or CSS-style <code>rgb(x,y,z)</code> values, where <code>x,y,z</code> must be values between 0 . . 255 .</p> <p>Or hexcoded colors like #000000 for black or #399bf9 for blue can be used.</p> <p>The longest bar will use this color directly and shorter bars will be drawn with a lighter color - the shorter the bar, the lighter the color.</p>

Barchart examples

```

<!-- mandatory parameters only -->
<component type="barchart" identifier="chart1" i18NKey="Product Status in Master Catalog">
  <parameter key="groupingField" value="Product2G.CurrentStatus"/>
  <dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.product2g.core.ProductsOfCatalog"/>
</component>

<!-- show bars of size 0 for the status values that are not used in any product -->
<component type="barchart" identifier="chart1" i18NKey="Product Status in Master Catalog">
  <parameter key="groupingField" value="Product2G.CurrentStatus"/>
  <parameter key="showBlankEntries" value="true"/>
  <dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.product2g.core.ProductsOfCatalog"/>
</component>

<!-- qualified grouping field with editable qualification specifying the language -->

```

```

<!-- show a bar with the count of all articles that do not have any short description in the given language -->
<component type="barchart" identifier="chart2" i18NKey="Article Short Desc in Master Catalog">
  <parameter key="groupingField" value="ArticleLang.DescriptionShort(${Default})"/>
  <parameter key="groupingField.lk0.editable" value="true" />
  <parameter key="showNullValues" value="true"/>
  <dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.article.core.ArticlesOfMasterCatalog"/>
</component>


<!-- report with an editable parameter and a different color for the bars -->
<component type="barchart" identifier="chart3" i18NKey="Articles by Segment in specified catalog (default: Apparel)">
  <parameter key="groupingField" value="ArticleLang.Segment(${Default})"/>
  <parameter key="barChartColor" value="rgb(34,45,78)"/>
  <dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportByAlias" ref="byCatalog" entity="Article" >
    <parameter key="catalog" value="Apparel"/>
    <parameter key="catalog.editable" value="true"/>
  </dataSource>
</component>

<!-- display the distribution of article prices in buckets -->
<component type="barchart" identifier="chart3" i18NKey="Article Prices in Master Catalog">
  <parameter key="groupingField" value="ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount(${Default},${Default},${Default},${Default},${Default},1.0)"/>
  <parameter key="numValueBuckets" value="10"/> <!-- maximum number of buckets is 10 -->
  <parameter key="showBlankEntries" value="true"/> <!-- show all buckets, even empty ones -->
  <parameter key="showNullValues" value="true"/> <!-- show a bar with the articles that don't have a price set up -->
  <dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.article.core.ArticlesOfMasterCatalog"/>
</component>

```


Piechart component

Displays a round pie chart that shows the distribution of values for a specified field in the specified set of data. The set is specified by an embedded data source. The semantics are very similar to the Barchart, just the presentation differs. Also, there are some additional options available as described below.

 As for the Barchart component, by clicking on a pie section the user can switch to a table view of the items that are represented by that section.

Type: piechart

Data source name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Description
dataSet	M	Specifies the data set. The barchart component supports combo boxes for editable data source parameters (see above).

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(p tional)	Example values	Description
groupingField	M	Article.CurrentStatus Product2GLang.Segment(default) Article.Status->QualityStatusSummary.Status({Default})	Specifies a Product 360 field in Service API syntax. The entity holding this field must match the entities provided by the dataSet data source. If the path to the subentity holding the field requires qualifications they are provided in a comma separated list at the end of the field name. If any of the qualifications have default definitions in the repository then those can be used by providing the special string "\${Default}" instead of an actual value for the qualification.
groupingField.kn.editable	O	true false (default)	Specifies whether the n th (starting at 0) qualification of the field should be made available as a drop down box in the UI so the user can switch between e.g. the segment field in English or German on the fly. By default no combo boxes for qualifications are displayed.  Note that for this to work the respective Product 360 qualification field has to have an enumeration assigned to it.
numValueBuckets	O	10 5	For some fields it does not make sense to count the appearance of each individual value as there would be too many sections (e.g. item prices). For such fields the values can be split into buckets and all values in a bucket are counted together (e.g. all item prices between 50 and 100). Currently this behaviour is only available for all fields of type BigDecimal and Long. The buckets are defined by taking into account the minimum and maximum values of the data set. Furthermore the bucket boundaries are also aligned to a well readable raster e.g. 1, 2.5, 5, 7.5, 10, ... The granularity of the chosen raster depends on the distance between min and max and also on the number of buckets to create as specified by this parameter. The actual number of created buckets may be less than specified due to the imposed raster. The lowest bucket always contains the minimum and the highest always contains the maximum value.
maxNumberOfEntries	O	10 (default)	Space is limited and rendering a pie chart with too many sections breaks up the layout. Hence, the maximum number of sections is limited.

Parameter name	Mandatory (Optional)	Example values	Description
show Legend	0	true false (default)	Toggles the visibility of a legend that lists all captions for each of the values.
show Null Values	0	true (default) false	Specifies whether the item count for items with missing/null values should be shown as a separate bar labelled "<No input>" or not. Note that pointers to deleted data are also considered to be null values. For instance an article keeps record of the user that created it. If that user has been marked as deleted in the meantime, this field will be treated as missing/null.
colors	0	red, blue, green, black #000000 (black), #399bf9 (blue) rbg(255, 0, 255) (magenta)	List of colors used for coloring the sections. Colors are separated by semicolon ";". Valid values are either CSS standard color names like red, blue, green, black. The CSS standard colors are defined here: http://www.w3.org/TR/CSS21/syndata.html#value-def-color . Or CSS-style rgb(x,y,z) values, where x,y,z must be values between 0 . . 255 . Or hexcoded colors like #000000 for black or #399bf9 for blue can be used.

Piechart examples

```

<!-- mandatory parameters only -->
<component type="piechart" identifier="chart1" i18NKey="Product Status in Master Catalog">
  <parameter key="groupingField" value="Product2G.CurrentStatus"/>
  <dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.product2g.core.ProductsOfCatalog"/>
</component>


<!-- pie chart with legend and custom colors -->
<component i18NKey="Product Status in Master Catalog" identifier="pie1" type="piechart">
  <parameter key="groupingField" value="Product2G.CurrentStatus"/>
  <parameter key="showLegend" value="true"/>
  <parameter key="colors" value="red;blue;green;pink"/>
  <dataSource identifier="dataSet" ref="com.heiler.ppm.product2g.core.ProductsOfCatalog" type="reportById"/>
</component>

```

Channel status component

Displays the result of Data Quality checks for the entity items specified by the dataSet data source. On the left hand side a list of channels (defined by the channelIdentifiers parameter) is displayed alongside the aggregated quality status counts

across all rules of the respective channel, i.e. how many entity items were in status OK, Failed, Unchecked. When a channel is selected then on the right hand side the list of quality rules from that channel is displayed with the rule specific status counts.

 The number of passed/failed/unchecked of a channel or of a rule can be selected by clicking on it. If the component is configured accordingly (see below) the user can then create a task for the selected set of items (e.g. all items that failed a certain rule).

Type: channelstatus

Data source name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Description
dataSet	M	Specifies the data set. The channelstatus component does not support editing of data source parameters.

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
channelIdentifiers	M	Mobile,Print Catalog,Web Shop,Amazon	Comma separated list of Product 360 channels to display. Nonexistent channels are ignored.
enableCreateTask	O	true false(default)	Specifies whether a button for creating a task is displayed whenever a category of items is selected from a channel or a rule. The task will have the respective set of items attached to it.
enableDrill Down	O	true false(default)	Specifies whether a button for showing the selected items is displayed whenever a category of items is selected from a channel or a rule. The view will show the respective set of items in a table.

Channel status example

```
<!-- Only display status, no possibility to create tasks -->
<component type="channelstatus" identifier="dqstatus1" i18NKey="Channel Status Information">
  <parameter key="channelIdentifiers" value="Mobile,Print Catalog,Web Shop"/>
  <parameter key="enableCreateTask" value="true"/>
  <dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.article.core.ArticlesOfMasterCatalog"/>
</component>


<!-- Display status and enable creating tasks -->
<component type="channelstatus" identifier="dqstatus2" i18NKey="Channel Status Information">
  <parameter key="channelIdentifiers" value="Mobile,Print Catalog,Web Shop"/>
  <parameter key="enableCreateTask" value="true"/>
  <dataSource identifier="dataSet" type="reportById" ref="com.heiler.ppm.article.core.ArticlesOfMasterCatalog"/>
</component>
```


My tasks component

Displays information about tasks related to the current user. Three different sets of tasks can be selected:


- Tasks assigned to the user and already accepted by the user

- Tasks assigned to the user or one of his/her user groups that have not yet been accepted
- Tasks assigned to other users or user groups for which the current user is the "responsible" person.

 The user can click on a task title which will either open the task UI of the task (if it is set), present the list of attached items of the task (if there are any) or just display the task details.

 When displaying the tasks that the user is responsible for he/she can click on the envelope next to the assignee's name to open the local email client and send an email regarding the task to the assignee. The envelope is available if the assignee is a single user (not a group) and Product 360 has been set up with an email address for this user.

Type: mytasks

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
initialSet	0	accepted (default) notAccepted myResponsibilities	Specifies which set of tasks is initially displayed in the component. The value is case insensitive. Unknown values are ignored and the default is used instead.
mode	0	all (default) workflow allFixed workflowFixed	<p>Specifies in which mode the component should operate. There are two modes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Displaying both normal and workflow tasks. • Displaying only workflow tasks and offering additional filtering capabilities <p>If set to "all" or "workflow" the mode specifies the initial mode and the user still has the possibility to change it in the UI.</p> <p>If set to "allFixed" or "workflowFixed" the mode is set accordingly and the user cannot change it.</p> <p> If no BPM server is configured the default mode is allFixed and this will override any setting in the template.</p>
filterByName	0	true false (default)	If set to true a text field is added in the component header. If the user enters some text in this field the task list is filtered down to those tasks that include the text in their name.


MyTasks examples


```
<!-- all parameters are optional -->
<component type="mytasks" identifier="mytasks1" i18NKey="My Tasks" />

<component type="mytasks" identifier="mytasks2" i18NKey="My Tasks">
  <parameter key="initialSet" value="notAccepted" />
  <parameter key="mode" value="allFixed" />
  <parameter key="filterByName" value="true" />
</component>
```


Team tasks component

Displays information about tasks related to members of the user's user groups. If the user has more than one user group assigned a combo box is displayed which can be used to filter the tasks so that only tasks for that group and its members are displayed.

 The user can click on a task title which will either open the task UI of the task (if it is set), present the list of attached items of the task (if there are any) or just display the task details.

 The user can click on the envelope next to the assignee's name to open the local email client and send an email regarding the task to the assigned. The envelope is available if the assignee is a single user (not a group) and Product 360 has been set up with an email address for this user.

Type: teamtasks

Parameter name	Mandatory (optional)	Example values	Description
mode	0	all (default) workflow allFixed workflowFixed	Specifies in which mode the component should operate. There are two modes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Displaying both normal and workflow tasks. • Displaying only workflow tasks and offering additional filtering capabilities If set to "all" or "workflow" the mode specifies the initial mode and the user still has the possibility to change it in the UI. If set to "all_fixed" or "workflow_fixed" the mode is set accordingly and the user cannot change it.  If no BPM server is configured the default mode is allFixed and this will override any setting in the template.
includeGroups	0	group1, group2	Comma separated list of user groups that should be considered when adding tasks to the table. By default all user groups of the current user are considered. The provided list is sanitized against the list of user groups of the current user. Unknown groups and groups that the user does not belong to are ignored.
excludeGroups	0	group1, group2	Comma separated list of user groups that should be ignored when adding tasks to the table. By default no user groups are ignored. If the includeGroups option is also present the excludeGroups are applied afterwards, i.e. if a group appears in both lists it will be ignored due to excludeGroups being applied at the end. The provided list is sanitized against the list of user groups of the current user. Unknown groups and groups that the user does not belong to are ignored.
completedTasksDaysLimit	0	5 (default) 10 -1	Completed tasks are also shown but only if they have been completed in the last couple of days. The actual number of days can be defined with this parameter. The number should be greater or equal to -1 - with -1 meaning "do not display completed tasks".

Parameter name	Mandatory (optional)	Example values	Description
filterByName	0	true false (default)	If set to true a text field is added in the component header. If the user enters some text in this field the task list is filtered down to those tasks that include the text in their name.
userAssignedTasks	0	true (default) false	Indicates whether tasks assigned to users of the user groups should also be listed or if only tasks directly assigned to the user groups are taken into consideration.

Team tasks examples

```

<!-- start in mode "all", show tasks for all user groups of the logged in user, include completed tasks of the last 5 days -->
<component type="teamtasks" identifier="teamtasks1" i18NKey="Team Tasks">

<!-- restrict mode and only include the groups specified here, do not show user assigned tasks, only user group assigned tasks -->
<component type="teamtasks" identifier="teamtasks2" i18NKey="Team Tasks">
  <parameter key="groups" value="PriceMaintainers, SuperUsers" />
  <parameter key="mode" value="allFixed" />
  <parameter key="userAssignedTasks" value="false" />
</component>

<!-- only include all user groups of the logged in user that are not listed here, extend time window for completed tasks and add a filter by name field -->
<component type="teamtasks" identifier="teamtasks3" i18NKey="Team Tasks">
  <parameter key="excludeGroups" value="DashboardAdmins" />
  <parameter key="completedTasksDaysLimit" value="10" />
  <parameter key="filterByName" value="true" />
</component>

```

Supplier Portal Timeline component

Displays the Product 360 Supplier Portal timeline as widget. Can be used for supplier communication and to get an overview on recent supplier activities.

Type: timeline

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
hsxWebappUrl	M	http://localhost:9090/hsx	Root url pointing to a running Supplier Portal application. If application runs behind a load balancer/reverse proxy, use externally visible url. Technically this component uses an iFrame to display the Timeline.

Supplier portal timeline example

```
<component type="timeline">
  <parameter key="hsxWebappUrl" value="http://portalserver:9090/hsx"/>
</component>
```

Workflow KPI component

Displays persisted KPI values that are the result a KPI calculation as described in the Knowledge Base documentation for the Standard KPI 'Average Time Spent In Workflow States'.

In order to show the calculated KPI values in the Web UI, the customer has to add a dashboard component of the type "workflowProcessKPI".

The component displays KPI values for certain parameters. The tool tip of the KPI value bar chart shows the corresponding object count.

Parameters which are selectable via Combobox are:


- KPI Identifier of the desired Workflow Process KPI
- Catalog filter (All or specific catalog)
- Time period (see preSelectionCurrentTimePeriod parameter in table below for possible values)
- Comparison time period dependent of the previously selected time period (see preSelectionPreviousTimePeriod parameter for possible values)


The WorkflowProcessCalculationConfig.xml configuration file mentioned in the Knowledge Base documentation for Standard KPI 'Average Time Spent In Workflow States' also has to be configured furthermore to show the KPI values in the Web UI:

- Each kpi element must have a sub element displayName with a particular display name in order to be clearly recognizable in the UI by the customer.
- The state element can have a sub element 'allowedValue' which helps the customer to compare the calculated KPI Values with the corresponding allowed value. This allowed value provides useful information to interpret the calculated KPI values and to identify possible problems within the workflow.

There are several component parameters to define the preselection value of the combobox parameters.

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
preSelectionKPI	O		Specifies the preselected value of Workflow Process KPI combobox. Valid values are the KPI identifier or its displayName which is defined in the above mentioned configuration xml file.

Parameter name	M(an dator y) O(pti onal)	Example values	Description										
preSelecti onCatalog	0	MASTER MySupplie rCatalogId entifier	Specifies the preselected value of catalog combobox. Valid values are the catalog identifier of a supplier catalog, or "MASTER" for master catalog.										
preSelecti onCurrent TimePerio d	0	CurrentDa y	<p>Specifies the preselected value of current time period combobox. Valid values are the following identifiers or its language specified display name:</p> <table><tr><th>identifier</th><th>display name (in english)</th></tr><tr><td>CurrentDay</td><td>Current day</td></tr><tr><td>CurrentWeek</td><td>Current month</td></tr><tr><td>CurrentMonth</td><td>Current week</td></tr><tr><td>CurrentYear</td><td>Current year</td></tr></table> <div> The language dependent display name should only be used, if all users login with the same language, since preselection then only works with this specific language. Therefor the identifier is recommended to be used.</div>	identifier	display name (in english)	CurrentDay	Current day	CurrentWeek	Current month	CurrentMonth	Current week	CurrentYear	Current year
identifier	display name (in english)												
CurrentDay	Current day												
CurrentWeek	Current month												
CurrentMonth	Current week												
CurrentYear	Current year												

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description																
preSelectionPreviousTimePeriod	0	PreviousDay	<p>Specifies the preselected value of previous time period combobox. Valid values are a PreviousTimePeriod identifier or its language specified displayName.</p> <table><tr><th>identifier</th><th>display name (in english)</th></tr><tr><td>NoComparisonPeriod</td><td>No comparison period</td></tr><tr><td>PreviousDay</td><td>Previous day</td></tr><tr><td>PreviousWeek</td><td>Previous week</td></tr><tr><td>SameWeekOfPreviousYear</td><td>Same week of previous year</td></tr><tr><td>PreviousMonth</td><td>Previous month</td></tr><tr><td>SameMonthOfPreviousYear</td><td>Same month of previous year</td></tr><tr><td>PreviousYear</td><td>Previous year</td></tr></table> <div> The language dependent display name should only be used, if all users login with the same language, since preselection then only works with this specific language. Therefor the identifier is recommended to be used.</div>	identifier	display name (in english)	NoComparisonPeriod	No comparison period	PreviousDay	Previous day	PreviousWeek	Previous week	SameWeekOfPreviousYear	Same week of previous year	PreviousMonth	Previous month	SameMonthOfPreviousYear	Same month of previous year	PreviousYear	Previous year
identifier	display name (in english)																		
NoComparisonPeriod	No comparison period																		
PreviousDay	Previous day																		
PreviousWeek	Previous week																		
SameWeekOfPreviousYear	Same week of previous year																		
PreviousMonth	Previous month																		
SameMonthOfPreviousYear	Same month of previous year																		
PreviousYear	Previous year																		
allowedTimeBarChartColor	0	red, blue, green, black #000000 (black), #399bf9(blue) rbg(255, 0, 255) (magenta)	<p>Specifies the color of the allowed time bar chart. Valid values are either CSS standard color names like red, blue, green, black. The CSS standard colors are defined here: http://www.w3.org/TR/CSS21/syndata.html#value-def-color.</p> <p>Or CSS-style rgb(x,y,z) values, where x,y,z must be values between 0 . . 255 .</p> <p>Or hexcoded colors like #000000 for black or #399bf9 for blue can be used.</p> <p>If no value is defined, the default color #6AA84F will be used.</p>																

Parameter name	Mandatory Optional	Example values	Description
currentTimeBarChartColor	0	red, blue, green, black #000000 (black), #399bf9(blue) rgb(255, 0, 255) (magenta)	Specifies the color of the current average completion time bar chart. Valid values are either CSS standard color names like red, blue, green, black. The CSS standard colors are defined here: http://www.w3.org/TR/CSS21/syntax3.html#value-def-color . Or CSS-style rgb(x,y,z) values, where x,y,z must be values between 0 . . 255 . Or hexcoded colors like #000000 for black or #399bf9 for blue can be used. If no value is defined, the default color #1155CC will be used.
previousTimeBarChartColor	0	red, blue, green, black #000000 (black), #399bf9(blue) rgb(255, 0, 255) (magenta)	Specifies the color of the previous average completion time bar chart. Valid values are either CSS standard color names like red, blue, green, black. The CSS standard colors are defined here: http://www.w3.org/TR/CSS21/syntax3.html#value-def-color . Or CSS-style rgb(x,y,z) values, where x,y,z must be values between 0 . . 255 . Or hexcoded colors like #000000 for black or #399bf9 for blue can be used. If no value is defined, the default color #00FFFF will be used.

Example dashboard template

Example dashboard template
<pre> <flexUi name="Default" version="1.0.0" > <layout type="grid"> <!-- Specify default parameters of the grid, like number of columns and rows --> <parameter key="columns" value="2"/> <parameter key="rows" value="2"/> <parameter key="rowHeight" value="350px"/> <parameter key="spacingSize" value="20px"/> <!-- Display a workflowProcessKPI component --> <component type="workflowProcessKPI" identifier="WorkflowProceesKPI1" > <parameter key="preSelectionKPI" value="kpi 2"/> <parameter key="preSelectionCatalog" value="All catalogs"/> <parameter key="preSelectionCurrentTimePeriod" value="Current year"/> <parameter key="preSelectionPreviousTimePeriod" value="Previous year"/> <parameter key="allowedTimeBarChartColor" value="green"/> <parameter key="currentTimeBarChartColor" value="blue"/> <parameter key="previousTimeBarChartColor" value="yellow"/> </component> </layout> </flexUi> </pre>

```
</component>
</layout>
</flexUi>
```

6.6.6

Flexible task UI components

Data provisioning in task UIs

In contrast to dashboard components the data provisioning of task UI components is driven by the task to which the task UI template is applied. Three different aspects play a role here:

- Is the component simply displaying data for a "certain item" or is it displaying a table or list of "child items of a certain item" ?
 - General components and forms display data for a certain item
 - List/table components display child items of a certain item

The definition of child items is rather broad in this context:

- A task usually has a set of items attached to it - in this context for example some "Article" items can be the children of a "Task" item.
- A product may have variant children or article children (depending on the product paradigm in use) underneath.
- A structure group may have a mixture of product, variant and article children assigned to it which maps to three distinct sets of child items.

- What entity does the "certain item" need to belong to in order to be suitable as input for a component ?
 - General components specify the applicable entity via the attribute `rootEntity` in the component tag. Leaving this out means the component can handle any entity.
 - Form components specify the applicable entity through the `rootEntity` attribute of the nested `fieldFormDefinition` (see below for details).
 - List/table components specify the entity of the child items through the `rootEntity` attribute of the nested `listModelDefinition` (see below for details).

Whether or not a "certain item" is suitable as input for the component depends on whether it can provide child items matching this entity.
For example a task item can be fed into a component displaying an article list only if the task has a set of child items with entity "Article".
- How is the "certain item" specified for a component ?
 - Statically through a parameter of the component in the XML
(e.g. a component displaying the structure groups of a structure system, with the actual structure system defined in the XML)
 - At runtime through the task for which the task UI is displayed
(e.g. a form displaying fields of the task)
 - Dynamically through selections in other components
(e.g. a form with details for an article listening to selection events in an article list)

So how does this all play together ?

1. Each component gets initialized with its parameters. If this is all that a specific component needs, it's done (e.g. a structure tree component with structure system as parameter)
2. Next the central task item that is currently displayed is forwarded to all components that indicate that they can handle it.
 - a. all components with `rootEntity = Task`

- b. list based components with a rootEntity for which the task can provide a list of matching child items
3. Whenever a user selects one or more items in a list based component the selected item(s) is/are forwarded to all components that can handle the respective entity
 - a. all components with rootEntity set to the entity of the selected item
 - b. list based components with rootEntity for the selected item can provide a list of matching child items (e.g. a list components displaying variants can be fed with a product item because the product can have variant child items)

Here is an example illustrating the data provisioning within a task UI. Details are omitted and the featured component types are fully documented further below.

Task UI data provisioning

```
<flexUi version="1.0.0">
  <layout type="grid">
    ...

    <!-- This form will receive the currently displayed task as input -->
    <form identifier="taskForm" i18NKey="Task: ">
      <fieldFormDefinition rootEntity="Task">
        ...
      </fieldFormDefinition>
    </form>

    <!-- List also receives the id of the task as it has listenFor Task inside it -->
    <!-- and displays the attached items of the task. -->
    <!-- The rootEntity attribute specifies what kind of items this table can display. -->
    <!-- User selecting an article in the table will trigger a selection event -->
    <list i18NKey="Items">
      <listenFor source="Task" type="initialEvent" />
      <listModelDefinition rootEntity="Article">
        ...
      </listModelDefinition>
    </list>

    <!-- This component will be updated with the selection events for Article -->
    <component identifier="preview1" type="preview" i18NKey="Detail" rootEntity="Article">
      ...
    </component>

    <!-- This form will also be updated with the selection events for Article -->
    <form identifier="translationForm" i18NKey="Translate">
      <fieldFormDefinition rootEntity="Article">
        ...
      </fieldFormDefinition>
    </form>

    ...
  </layout>
</flexUi>
```

Filtering

While the rules described so far cover most cases, it can be necessary to restrict the selection events that a component listens for. This can be achieved with the `listenFor` tag. Filtering can be set up regarding the source of events (component identifier) and/or the type of event. For now only one type of event (`selectionEvent`) is supported.

Multiple filters can be set up for a single component, so it is still possible to listen for selections in more than one source component.

Event filtering example

```
<!-- table showing the products attached to the task -->
<list identifier="TaskProducts" i18NKey="Products">
  <listenFor source="Task" type="initialEvent" />
  <listModelDefinition rootEntity="Product2G">
    ...
  </listModelDefinition>
</list>

<!-- this preview is tied to the table above -->
<component identifier="productPreview" type="preview" i18NKey="Detail (Product)" rootEntity="Product2G">
  <listenFor source="TaskProducts" type="selectionEvent" />
  ...
</component>

<!-- displaying a structure tree based on configuration parameter -->
<component identifier="structure" type="structureTree" i18NKey="My structure" >
  ...
  <parameter key="structure" value="MyStructure" />
</component>

<!-- the selected structure can be used to derive a set of product child items ! -->
<list identifier="StructureProducts" pageSize="20" i18NKey="Classified in Structure">
  <listenFor source="structure" type="selectionEvent"/>
  <listModelDefinition rootEntity="Product2G">
    ...
  </listModelDefinition>
</list>

<!-- this preview is tied to the list above, ignores selections in TaskProducts table -->
<component identifier="productPreviewFromStructure" type="preview" i18NKey="Detail (Product)" rootEntity="Product2G">
  <listenFor source="StructureProducts" type="selectionEvent" />
  ...
</component>
```

Header strategy

It is possible to change component header via the headerStrategy tag. By this header implementation may be changed and additional information or controls displayed. For the moment the following values are possible:

- "defaultHeader",
- "defaultEntityHeader"
- "taskActionsHeader".

defaultHeader

The "defaultHeader" is used in all components not related to entity information (e. g. message component or iframe component) and information from components i18NKey attribute.

defaultEntityHeader

The "defaultEntityHeader" is used in components which shows information from given entity (form, table, etc.) and provides entity name information in header.

taskActionsHeader

The "taskActionsHeader" is currently used for:

- **Standard tasks** (non-workflow tasks):
In case of unaccepted standard tasks, the header adds a toggle button for accepting the current task in the form that displays the task details.
In case of accepted standard tasks, the header adds a toggle button for marking the current task as completed.
- **Workflow tasks:**
In case of unaccepted workflow tasks, the header adds a toggle button for accepting the selected entities (items, products or variants) in the entity table that displays the attached entities of the workflow task.
In case of accepted workflow tasks, the header adds a toggle button for finishing the work on the selected entities in the entity table that displays the attached items of the workflow task.
In case of accepted "approval workflow tasks", the header adds toggle buttons for approving and rejecting (with comment) the selected entities in the entity table that displays the attached items of the workflow task.



The current "taskActionsHeader" implementation does not add a toggle button for terminating the current workflow for entities of a workflow task. Furthermore, a click on the buttons for accepting, finishing and approving does not open a dialog for entering comments.

Task UI specific syntax summary

Task UI components deviate from the standard component syntax as follows:

- Several components have their own tags: `form`, `list`, `mediaDetail` - see the respective section for details.
- Specification of the applicable entity via the `rootEntity` attribute of the component tag or a nested tag in case of `form`, `list`.
- Filtering of events via the nested `listenFor` tag.
- Specification of the applicable for initialization entity for `list` tag via the nested `listenFor` tag.
- Activation of task actions via the nested `headerStrategy` tag.

Form

Displays a set of fields for a single item in a form. Due to its rather specific content it has its own tag.

Tag: `form`

Setting	Location	Description
<code>fieldFormDefinition</code>	Nested tag	For the actual form definition the syntax is the same as for defining detail tabs in the Product 360 web application as described in "Customizing Lists Views, Detail Tabs and Action Menus". Note that the <code>fieldFormDefinition</code> tag used in this component corresponds to the <code>definition</code> tag used in detail tab XML files.
<code>rootEntity</code>	Attribute of <code>fieldFormDefinition</code>	Specifies what kind of items this component can display.

 Note that in this context the other attributes of the `fieldFormDefinition` tag are not applicable and should not be used (e.g. `permissionId`, `position`, `id`, `i18NKey`)

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
inlineLabels	0	<i>true</i> (default) <i>false</i>	Should field label be in one line with value or above it.

Form example

```
<form identifier="taskForm" i18NKey="Task: ">
  <parameter key="inlineLabels" value="true"/>
  <header headerStrategy="taskActionsHeader" />
  <fieldFormDefinition rootEntity="Task">
    <column>
      <fieldGroup>
        <field identifier="Task.Name" />
        <field identifier="Task.Description" />
        <field identifier="Task.CreationUser" />
        <field identifier="Task.CreationDate" />
      </fieldGroup>
    </column>
    <column>
      <fieldGroup>
        <field identifier="Task.User" />
        <field identifier="Task.UserGroup" />
        <field identifier="Task.Substitute" />
        <field identifier="Task.Responsible" />
      </fieldGroup>
    </column>
  </fieldFormDefinition>
</form>
```

List

Displays a set of items in a table. Due to its rather specific content it has its own tag.



Selections within the table are forwarded to matching components.

Tag: list

Setting	Location	Description
listModel Definition	Nested tag	For the definition of fields that are displayed in the table the syntax is the same as for defining list models in the Product 360 web application as described in "Customizing Lists Views, Detail Tabs and Action Menus". Note that the listModelDefinition tag used in this component corresponds to the definition tag used in list model XML files.
rootEntity	Attribute of listMode IDefinitio n	Specifies what kind of items this component can display. It will accept an item (e.g. through selection events) only if a list of child items can derived from it with this entity.

Setting	Location	Description
pageSize	Attribute of list tag	Specifies page size of underlying table. It defines amount of rows loaded from server each time during scrolling. Default is 20.

⚠ Note that in this context the other attributes of the listModelDefinition tag are not applicable and should not be used (i18NKey)

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(pショナル)	Example values	Description
forceShowContentFromMaster	0	<i>false</i> (default) <i>true</i>	For the case when data source for list is structure group, information about catalog can be obtained from task context (default behaviour) or master catalog can be used forcibly.

List example

```
<list identifier="StructureProducts" pageSize="20" i18NKey="Classified in Structure">
  <listModelDefinition rootEntity="Product2G">
    <field caption="%web.client.product.table.thumbnail" identifier="Product2GMediaAssetDocument.ImageIdentifier"
sortable="true" width="50">
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticleMediaAssetDocumentType.LK.Language" value="English" />
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticleMediaAssetDocumentType.LK.Quality" value="Internet image" />
    </field>
    <field identifier="Product2G.ProductNo" sortable="true" />
    <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" sortable="true">
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="English" />
    </field>
  </listModelDefinition>
</list>
```

⚠ Note that if list have to be populated by task content instead of listening selection events listenFor tag should be used:

Task content list example

```
<list identifier="TaskProducts" i18NKey="Products" pageSize="20">
  <listenFor source="Task" type="initialEvent" />
  <listModelDefinition rootEntity="Product2G">
    <field identifier="Product2G.ProductNo" sortable="true" />
    <field identifier="Product2G.CurrentStatus" sortable="true" width="180" />
    <field identifier="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort" sortable="true">
      <logicalKey identifier="ArticleLangType.LK.Language" value="English" />
    </field>
  </listModelDefinition>
</list>
```

Preview

Displays a preview template.

Type: preview

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
previewTemplate	M	<i>WebShopPreview</i>	The name of the preview template to display.
enableAutoRefresh	O	<i>false (default)</i> <i>true</i>	Specifies whether the component is refreshed on edit events.

Preview example

```
<component type="preview" identifier="preview" i18NKey="Detail (Product)" rootEntity="Product2G">
  <parameter key="previewTemplate" value="Product - Web, Flexible UI, Translation"/>
  <parameter key="enableAutoRefresh" value="true"/>
</component>
```

Structure tree

Displays the structure tree with the structure groups of the specified structure system.



Selections in the tree are forwarded to matching components.

Type: structureTree

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
structureSystem	M	<i>HeilerStandard</i>	External identifier for the structure system that will be displayed.

Structure tree example

```
<component identifier="structure" type="structureTree" i18NKey="Structure" >
  <parameter key="structureSystem" value="HeilerStandard" />
</component>
```

Media Document Details

Displays information about selected media attachment in one or more detail tab defined by a set of nested form definitions. The form definitions are specified in definition tags within a formDefinitions tag, each definition represents one section.

Tag: mediaDetail

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
embeddedMetaDataTabVisible	O	<i>true (default)</i> <i>false</i>	Defines whether the embedded metadata tab is shown for the HMM provider.
embeddedMetadataTabPosition	O	<i>30 (default)</i>	Defines the position of the embedded metadata tab for the HMM provider.

Media document details examples

```
<mediaDetail identifier="mediaDocumentDetailsId" i18NKey="Details">
  <parameter key="embeddedMetaDataTabVisible" value="true" />
  <parameter key="embeddedMetadataTabPosition" value="30" />
  <formDefinitions>
    <definition i18NKey="%web.multimedia.detail.tab.technical.information" rootEntity="MediaAsset">
      <column>
        <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="false" subEntityId="MediaAssetDocumentAttributes">
          <field identifier="MediaAssetDocumentAttributes.FilenameHMM" readOnly="true"/>
          <field identifier="MediaAssetDocumentAttributes.TypeHMM" readOnly="true"/>
          <field identifier="MediaAssetDocumentAttributes.ColorDepthHMM" readOnly="true"/>
          <field identifier="MediaAssetDocumentAttributes.ColorSpaceHMM" readOnly="true"/>
        </fieldGroup>
      </column>
    </definition>
    <definition i18NKey="%web.multimedia.detail.tab.general.information" rootEntity="MediaAssetFile">
      <column>
        <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="true" subEntityId="MediaAssetFileAttributeLang">
          <field identifier="MediaAssetFileAttributeLang.Name"/>
          <field identifier="MediaAssetFileAttributeLang.Memo"/>
          <logicalKey identifier="MediaAssetFileAttributeLangType.LK.Language" selectable="true" value="English"/>
        </fieldGroup>
        <fieldGroup displaySectionWidget="false" subEntityId="MediaAssetFileAttribute">
          <field identifier="MediaAssetFileAttribute.Level"/>
          <field identifier="MediaAssetFileAttribute.State"/>
          <field identifier="MediaAssetFileAttribute.Status"/>
          <field identifier="MediaAssetFileAttribute.InProgress"/>
        </fieldGroup>
      </column>
    </definition>
  </formDefinitions>
</mediaDetail>
```

Media documents list

Displays list of media documents in the selected category. Has ability to filter documents.

Type: documentsList

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
dragEnabled	0	<i>true</i> (default) <i>false</i>	Defines whether the drag from list operation enabled.
selectionMode	0	<i>none, single</i> (default), <i>multiple</i>	Defines if the user can select (one or more) media documents.

Media documents examples

```
<component identifier="documentsListId" type="documentsList" i18NKey="Images" >
  <parameter key="selectionMode" value="single" />
</component>
```

Media categories tree

Displays tree of media categories for a specified root category.

Type: multimediaTree

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
category	O	<i>hlr-system</i>	Root category name which children to display. By default shows all.


Media tree examples

```
<component identifier="multimediaTreeId" type="multimediaTree" i18NKey="Multimedia attachments" >
</component>
```

Dynamic Webpage

Displays an external webpage with a URL that can contain a parameter. For task attached articles/variants/products this is useful to preview it e.g. in a live web shop using its identifier.

Without using parameter *valueField*, this component can be used to simply display an external webpage.

 Note that no content will be displayed if the publisher of the external page does not allow it to be displayed in a frame.

Type: dynamicWebPage

Parameter name	M(andatory) O(ptional)	Example values	Description
urlPattern	M	<i>http://yourshop.com/display?itemid={0}</i>	URL that will be used. {0} is the placeholder.
valueField	O	<i>Product2G.Id</i>	The value of this Product 360 Field will be used to replace the placeholder. See the gropingField parameter of the barchart component for examples regarding logical key qualification of this field. If not set, placeholder will not be used, and external webpage won't be refreshed on selection change.

Dynamic web page example

```
<component type="dynamicWebPage" identifier="websearch" i18NKey="Search results for short description"
rootEntity="Product2G">
  <parameter key="urlPattern" value="http://www.searchsite.com/search?q={0}"/>
  <parameter key="valueField" value="Product2GLang.DescriptionShort(de)"/>
</component>
```

Characteristic values form

Displays a form to maintain characteristic values of items selected in a list. This is a great way to have a full page form based data entry flow on items with categories assigned and their characteristics insight.

Type: characteristicrecordset

Dynamic web page example

```
<component i18NKey="Characteristics" identifier="characteristicsDetails" rootEntity="Article"
type="characteristicrecordset">
  <listenFor source="TaskItems" type="selectionEvent"/>
  <header headerStrategy="characteristicsHeader"/>
</component>
```

Drag & Drop

Some components used in Task UIs support drag and drop. For now this includes the classification and media attachment use cases. In the classification scenario the user can drag a single or multiple items from the items list and drop them on structure tree node similarly as in the existing structure context of the web client. For multimedia assignment the media document can be dragged from media documents list component and dropped on a row in task item list. If the target item is part of a current multiselection in that list then the whole selection acts as drop target and the media document will be attached to all selected items.

7 Media Manager Configuration

These sections provide assistance with installing the individual components of Product 360 - Media Manager and corresponding third-party software.



Note that the information in the following sections is intended for Informatica system partners and trained administrators. End users should contact their administrator with any problems in this area, as improper handling and operation of the software and procedures described can cause damage and data losses.

7.1 Activating PIM - Media Manager, defining volumes & setting up Funcd

7.1.1 Activating Product 360 - Media Manager

After installing or upgrading Product 360 - Media Manager you must activate the system before you can use it. The procedure is as follows:

1. Start the **Administration** module.
2. If you have entered your station data when starting the module – i.e. the station number, location and database alias – you will be prompted to enter the activation key.

Enter the activation-key

No or no valid activation-key was entered for following product-ID

Enter the activation code below.

If you do not yet have one, send us your details to support@informatica.com.

Enter the activation-key:

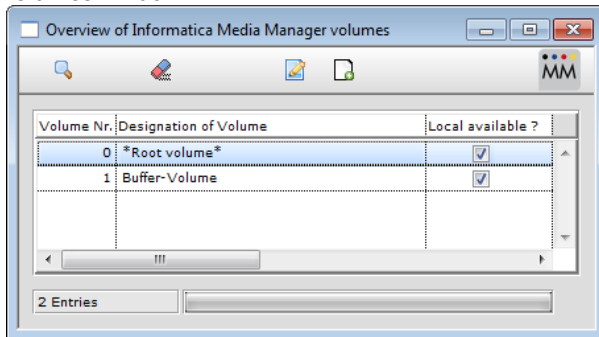
Cancel Save

3. Contact Informatica Support to receive an activation key.
4. Enter the activation key in the **Enter activation key:** field and click on **Save**.
5. Restart the **Administration** module so that your changes will take effect.

7.1.2 Defining Volumes

On each workstation you have to define the available Product 360 - Media Manager volumes. To do so the desired volumes have to be mounted on the respective volumes on the machine and the logged on user must have read and write permission on them. After mounting the volumes they are defined in Product 360 - Media Manager as follows:

1. Start the **Administration** module.
2. Select **System > Volumes of Product 360 - Media Manager** to open the **Overview of Product 360 - Media Manager volumes** window.



3. Double-click an existing volume to modify it or click on the **New** button to create a new one.
4. The settings in the **Global Volume data** area are system wide. You have to define them only once.

i Keep in mind to use the right path separators for the respective machines, e.g. like the file server or the database server.

5. Now tell the Product 360 - Media Manager workstation where it can find the current volume. You can do this in the **Local assignment** area.

i UNC paths

We recommend using UNC paths instead of locally mapped network shares.

6. Repeat the steps 3 to 5 for each volume.
7. Repeat the steps 1 to 6 for each Product 360 - Media Manager workstation.

7.1.3 Setting up Funcd

In the **Administration** module, select **System > System parameters** to open the **Modify system data** window. Go to the **Network** tab and enter the values for the Funcd IP addresses and ports for your Product 360 - Media Manager system.

Modify system data		Workstation: 227		Entries of system data			
 Standard Network Medias Production Archiv/Pipe Planning Messages							
Network settings <p>File Server Type Used <input type="radio"/> Unix/HELIOS <input checked="" type="radio"/> Windows</p> <p>Database Server Type Used <input type="radio"/> Unix <input checked="" type="radio"/> Windows</p> <p>IP Address FUNCID <input type="text" value="10.10.11.185"/> Port FUNCID <input type="text" value="11100"/></p> <p>IP Address FUNCPIPI <input type="text"/> Port FUNCPIPI <input type="text" value="0"/></p>							
OPI settings <p>Type of Layout Generation <input checked="" type="radio"/> Layout-images are made in subdirectory <input type="radio"/> Layout-files are made with extension</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Delete layout images of orders/jobs after archiving?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Delete Medias Layout Images after Archiving? (Must not be deleted in the case of an external call (Internet/ISDN))</p> <p>Name of Layout-directory/ of extension according to type <input type="text"/></p>							
Conventions for file names <p><input type="checkbox"/> Restrict characters allowed in file names</p> <p>Allowed characters <input type="text" value="8&öqwertzuiopasdfghjklxyxvbnm ÄÖÜQWERTZUIOPASDFGHJKLYXCVBNM1234567890!\$%&'@_~`-+=,./\ '\"/></p> <p>Replacement character for an unallowed character <input type="text" value="#"/></p> <p>Maximum length of a file name <input type="text" value="128"/></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Should special characters such as \ and / be converted to # (important for common Mac/PC connection)?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Should special characters ä, ö, ß, etc. be converted to ae, oe, ss, etc. (important for common Mac/PC connection)?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Files that are added must have a file extension <input type="checkbox"/> File extension must be in the MEDIAS list of file types</p>							
<input type="button" value="Cancel"/>				<input type="button" value="Save"/>			

7.2 External preview generation

7.2.1 External preview generation

External preview generation enables you to create the previews of your media objects using a separate application or with adapted options and not using ImageMagick, as is normally the case in Product 360 - Media Manager.



This function should only be used and configured by administrators. A very thorough knowledge of the system is required to perform the steps described below. We strongly recommend that you do not use external preview generation if you do not possess the requisite technical knowledge.

External preview generation can be used to manage the creation of preview images for any file format for specific customers or all customers.

The formats to be delegated to external preview generation and for which customer(s) are defined in the **datatypes.xml** file in the directory **[Volume0]/opasdata/conf**. This directory also includes the file **example_datatypes.xml**, which contains some sample definitions.

In the file **datatypes.xml**, you specify which Funcd is to be used to call up an external command for a customer and data format. The value **1** indicates that the Funcd on the file server is used. The file server can be running under Unix or Windows. The value **2** indicates that the Funcd on the second pipeline computer is used. The 2nd pipeline computer runs under Windows.

The external command itself must be specified as a file path from the calling Functd. This path must not contain any blank spaces or special characters. The command receives three command line parameters from the Functd.


- The first parameter is the path from Functd to the original file. The previews are to be generated from this file. The command called must generate three JPG files from the original file. The first file may be a maximum of 25 x 25 pixels. The second file may be a maximum of 100 x 100 pixels. The third file should be larger than the second file by the factor defined in the Medias settings in the Administration module.
- The second parameter is the basic name of the files generated.
- The third path is the absolute path from the Functd to the directory in which the generated files are stored. The third parameter is specified without a separator at the end.

The Functd then executes the command, for example: `/export/db-main/opastool/TransScript01.sh '/export/buffer/buffer/s79/test.eps' 041109123456 '/export/buffer/buffer/s80'`

The shell script TranScript01.sh must generate the files:

1. `/export/buffer/buffer/s80/041109123456_1.jpg` with a maximum size of 25x25 pixels
2. `/export/buffer/buffer/s80/041109123456_2.jpg` with a maximum size of 100x100 pixels
3. `/export/buffer/buffer/s80/041109123456_3.jpg` with a size corresponding to the factor set in the Medias settings in the Administration module


Of course, instead of using a shell script you can also call up a special program or delegate the parameters within a shell script to other programs.

 The file paths for the original file and the generated files are case-sensitive.

If Product 360 - Media Manager cannot find one of the three expected files, the corresponding internal preview generation function is used.

Example of the file `datatypes.xml`

Here is an example of a possible configuration and structure of the file `datatypes.xml` in the directory `[Volume0]/opasdata/conf`.

 The file `datatypes.xml` may not contain any comments because the parser used cannot process them.

`datatypes.xml`

```
<DEFINITION>
  <ENTRY>
    <CUSTOMER>D049999</CUSTOMER>
    <DATATYPE>.eps</DATATYPE>
    <FUNCD>1</FUNCD>
    <PROGRAM>/export/opas/buffer_volume/TransScript01.sh</PROGRAM>
  </ENTRY>
  <ENTRY>
    <CUSTOMER>D049999</CUSTOMER>
    <DATATYPE>epsf</DATATYPE>
    <FUNCD>1</FUNCD>
    <PROGRAM>/export/opas/buffer_volume/TransScript01.sh</PROGRAM>
  </ENTRY>
  <ENTRY>
    <CUSTOMER>D049999</CUSTOMER>
    <DATATYPE>.tif</DATATYPE>
    <FUNCD>2</FUNCD>
```

```

        <PROGRAM>X:\opas\buffer_volume\TranScript02.bat</PROGRAM>
    </ENTRY>
    <ENTRY>
        <CUSTOMER>D049999</CUSTOMER>
        <DATATYPE>tiff</DATATYPE>
        <FUNCD>2</FUNCD>
        <PROGRAM>X:\opas\buffer_volume\TranScript02.bat</PROGRAM>
    </ENTRY>
</DEFINITION>

```

Example of a shell script

Here is an example of a shell script for external preview generation. This shell script is also located in the file **TranScript01.sh** in the directory **[Volume0]/opasdata/conf**.

TranScript01.sh

```

#!/bin/bash
# Enter the absolute path to the ImageMagick convert command here.
CONV_PATH=/export/opas/volume0/db-main/opastool/funcd/tools/convert
# You can use this value to control the preview quality.
# The default value is 72.
# Lower values generate lower quality previews.
# Higher values generate better quality previews.
CONV_DENS=200
# You can set the width x height size of the small preview in pixels here.
# You should only modify this value slightly, if at all.
SMALL_SIZE=25x25
You can set the width x height size of the medium preview in pixels here.
# You should only modify this value slightly, if at all.
MEDIUM_SIZE=100x100
You can set the width x height size of the large preview in pixels here.
# You should adjust this value to match your settings. Refer to the file example_datatypes.xml.
BIG_SIZE=400x400
# From this point onwards, you do not need to change anything.
SRC=$1
TMP=$3/$2_4.tif
DST1=$3/$2_1.jpg
DST2=$3/$2_2.jpg
DST3=$3/$2_3.jpg
$CONV_PATH -density $CONV_DENS "$SRC" "$TMP[0]"
$CONV_PATH -geometry $SMALL_SIZE "$TMP" "$DST1"
$CONV_PATH -geometry $MEDIUM_SIZE "$TMP" "$DST2"
$CONV_PATH -geometry $BIG_SIZE "$TMP" "$DST3"
rm -f "$TMP"

```

7.3 Setting up web front end


7.3.1 Setting up the Internet module (Internet Administration Console) (Obsolete since Product 360 8.0)

This chapter is obsolete since Product 360 8.0. For reasons of compatibility to Product 360 versions < 8.0 this chapter is still remaining in Product 360 version 8.0 documentation.

The procedure for setting up the Internet module is as follows:

1. Start the Tomcat server if it is not already running.


2. Start the Internet module using the **OPAS_xob.exe** program from the **oxobjsrv** directory in your local Product 360 - Media Manager installation.
3. Navigate to **Presettings > Presettings** and, in the subsequent window, go to the **Master 1** tab. Make the following settings on this tab:
 - **Should a log be kept?**
 - **Time contingent for user in minutes** controls the timeout for users who are logged into the Internet module.

 A value of **30** minutes is recommended.


- **Max. number of displayed records per search** defines the number of hits a search will return.

 A value of **500** is recommended.


- **Max. data quantity in MB that may be transmitted via the module** defines how many Megabytes of data can be downloaded using the Internet module. Downloading of larger volumes of data terminates with an error message.

 A value of **100** is recommended.


- **Should the e-mails be sent with the Pipeline module?:** If you activate this setting, e-mails are sent using the Pipeline module rather than the Internet module.
- **URL of dindex page for workflow e-mail processing:** In some e-mails, paths to the dindex page are specified in order to enable direct access to the web application.

 This setting should only be made after the Tomcat server has been configured. There you can copy the path to the page from the web browser and enter the prefix **d** before **index**.


- **Should previews of job components be generated via the pipeline?**

 To relieve the load on Internet module you can use the Pipeline module to generate previews.

- **Should MEDIAS previews be cached?:** If you activate this option, previews of MEDIAS objects are buffered, which means that they do not have to be retrieved from the content and media database each time they are called up.

 This speeds up the page layout process in the web application.

5. Go to the **Master 2** tab:
 - **Under Station number of this computer**, enter the local Product 360 - Media Manager workstation number.
 - It is recommended that you enable communication with the Session Manager.
 - Enter the **IP address of this computer**.
 - Under **Port of this computer**, define a port range, e.g. **85-94**.
 - Specify a port to communicate with the Session Manager (default **81**).
 - **Path to the working directories of this computer:** Click on the relevant button to select the directory. It is recommended to use UNC paths.

 The directory is part of the Web application (Windows: **C:\OpasGWebServer\workdir**). If necessary, enable this directory in the network.

- **Max. time limit for a TCP/IP packet (in seconds)** is set to **5** seconds by default.
- **Sleep time between the individual requests (in ms)** is set to **10** milliseconds by default.
- **Integrate watermark starting from which pixel dimension** is set to **150** by default.


 This setting determines the image size in pixels above which a watermark will be integrated.

6. Click on **Save** to save your entries.
7. You have to restart the Product 360 - Media Manager Internet module.


You can call up the Product 360 - Media Manager web front end using **http://<IP address of Tomcat computer>:8080/opas/index.jsp**.

7.3.2 Setting up the Session Manager (Obsolete since Product 360 8.0)

This chapter is obsolete since Product 360 8.0. For reasons of compatibility to Product 360 versions < 8.0 this chapter is still remaining in Product 360 version 8.0 documentation.

 The Session Manager is part of the Web application and, after installation, is located in the directory e.g. **C:\OpasGWebServer\XOBSessionManager**.


1. In the file **server.xml** in the directory **[XOBSessionManager]\conf**, adapt the following values:
 1. **<ServerPort value="81"/>**: Depending on the free port or the port to be used.
 2. **<WebPort value="8089"/>**
 3. **<LogLevel value="7"/>**
 4. **<server IP="192.168.25.170" Port="82" Prio="5" Active="Y"/>**
 5. **<server IP="192.168.25.215" Port="86" Prio="2" Active="N"/>**

 The priority **Prio** allows more powerful computers to be utilized more intensively. **1** is the highest priority, **20** the lowest.
The Internet module can be activated and deactivated using **Active**.
Under **IP** enter the IP address of the computer on which you want to install the Internet module.

- Save all your entries.
- Start the Session Manager using **startup.bat**.

You can also start the Session Manager as a Windows service; refer to [Run Product 360 - Media Manager server modules as a Windows service](#).

You can query the status of the Session Manager under **http://localhost:[Port for info page]/** in your browser.


 Adapt the file **Base.cfg** so that the Web application submits your queries via the Session Manager.


7.4 Connecting the LDAP directory service

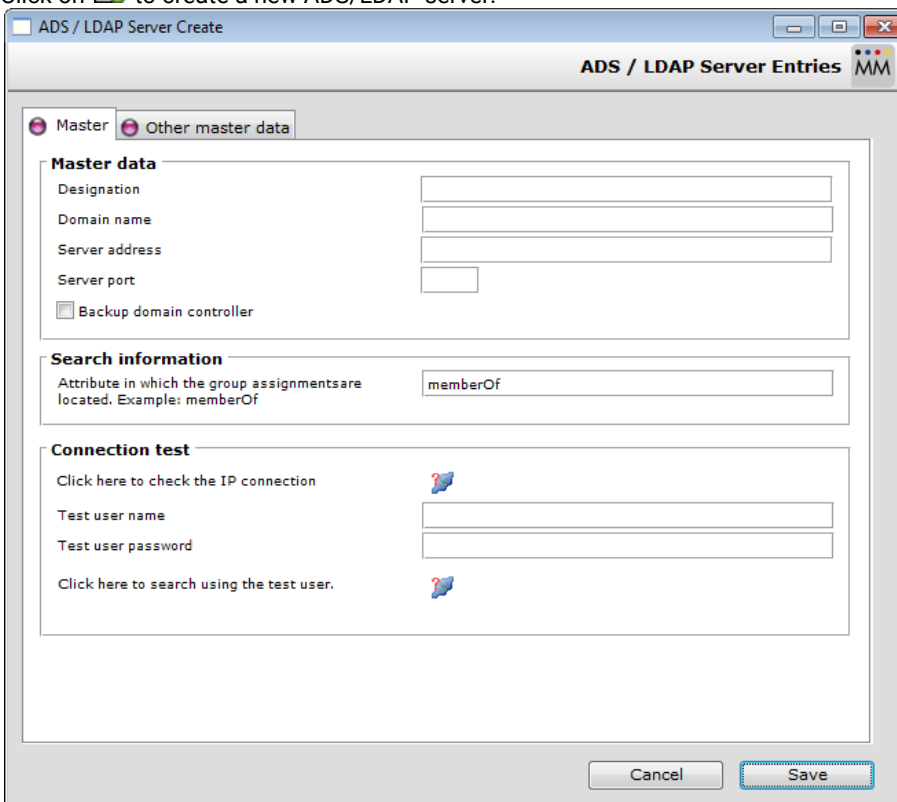
The LDAP option provides an interface between the Product 360 - Media Manager system and an ADS server, to reduce the amount of administration work for users in the two systems and eliminate redundancy.

It is implemented in every module, which forwards login requests from Product 360 - Media Manager to a directory service, synchronizes the data in this service with the Product 360 - Media Manager system and ensures that access to and rights in Product 360 - Media Manager are in line with your requirements.

LDAP stands for **L**ightweight **D**irectory **A**ccess **P**rotocol and represents a method of mapping structured directories, e.g. for employees or customers. **ADS** from Microsoft stands for **A**ctive **D**irectory **S**ervice and is an implementation of LDAP, which is very similar to LDAP but differs from it on certain points. ADS is mostly used in Windows networks with domains.

 ADS and LDAP provide extremely versatile configuration options. As a result, it is not possible to make a general statement about what extensions are necessary for the interface to the LDAP module. Further information can be found in the license conditions.

1. Start the Administration module.
2. Select the menu **System > System parameters** and enable **Activation of LDAP Login** (If this option was disabled a restart is needed)
3. Select the menu **ADS/LDAP > LDAP server settings** to open the overview list of ADS/LDAP servers.
4. Click on  to create a new ADS/LDAP server.



5. Adapt the following settings on the **Master** tab:
 - Under **Designation** you enter the designation of your choice for your server. The designation has no influence on the operation of the module or the directory service server.
 - Under **Domain name** you need to enter the name of your domain (e.g. mycompany.com).
 - Under **Server address** you need to enter the name (or the IP address) at which your directory service server can be contacted.
 - Under **Server port** you need to enter the port at which your directory service server can be contacted (default: **389**).
 - Attribute of group assignments, default is **memberOf**
 - When you have finished entering your settings, click on **Save**.

Now you have to create the mapping between the Product 360 - Media Manager user groups and the ADS user groups:

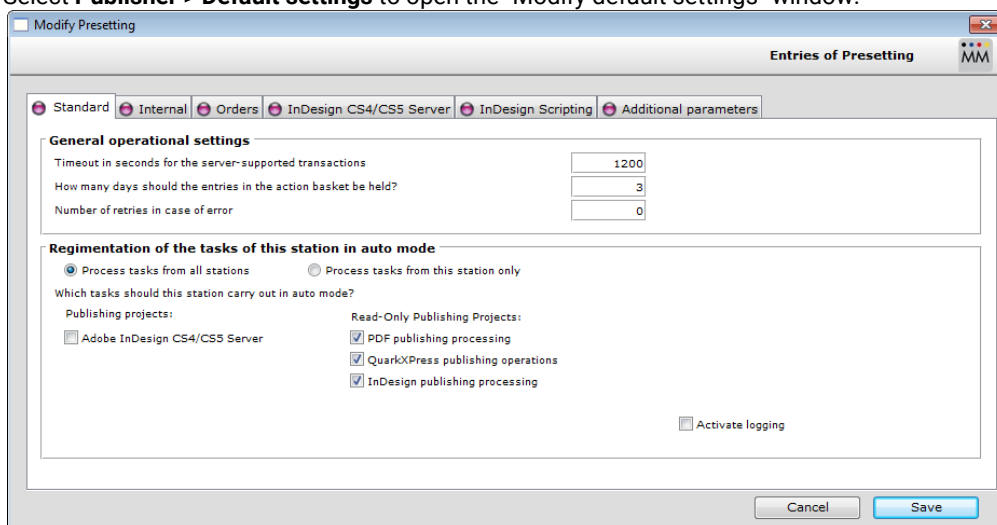
1. Select the menu **ADS/LDAP > LDAP group settings**.to open the overview list for group assignments.
2. Create new group assignments, e.g. LDAP group:
CN=companyname,OU=groups,OU=mycity,DC=mycompany,DC=com
3. Select the corresponding Product 360 - Media Manager user group.
4. Click on **Save**.

7.5 Setting up Media Publisher

7.5.1 Presettings window

i To edit the default settings for the Media Publisher module, you need to log in as a user with "Media Publisher administration" rights. You will find more information about user rights in the documentation for the Administration module.

1. Open the Media Publisher module. The module is pre-configured in such a way that it does not automatically start in automatic mode.
2. Close the message about missing default settings by clicking on **OK**.
3. Select **Publisher > Default settings** to open the "Modify default settings" window.



"Standard" tab

1. The options in the **General operational settings** section apply to all projects and tasks processed on the local workstation by the Media Publisher module.
 - **Timeout in seconds for server-supported transactions** defines how many seconds the Media Publisher module waits for responses from Functd or Scripting Servers.
 - **How many days should the entries in the action basket be held?** defines how long logs of executed actions remain in the action basket.
 - **Number of retries following error** controls how often an action is repeated in case of an error before the module cancels processing of the action.
2. In the **Regulate tasks of this station in automatic mode** section, you can specify how you want the Media Publisher module to process everything on this workstation.
 - **Process tasks from all stations** and **Process tasks from this station only** defines whether jobs in the action basket will only be processed if they were created locally or also if they come from other workstations. If you want the Media Publisher module to run in automatic mode on this workstation and to execute corresponding actions for all users, set **Process tasks from all stations** here.

- You can also specify which project types will be processed.
Grayed out fields cannot be selected as the corresponding scripting engines are not licensed. It can be useful to restrict the project types, for example if you are running different scripting engines on different workstations and you want to improve the communication speed between the relevant module of Media Publisher and the associated local scripting engine. This can also reduce network traffic.

"Internal" tab


1. You can **Activate automatic mode for processing action basket**.
2. You can specify whether you want it to be processed at a fixed time or at a defined interval. Depending on your selection, enter the appropriate values in the relevant fields.
3. Required data can also be restored automatically if it is archived.

"Orders" tab


1. You can **Activate automatic mode for processing action basket**.
2. You can specify whether you want it to be processed at a fixed time or at a defined interval. Depending on your selection, enter the appropriate values in the relevant fields.
3. Required data can also be restored automatically if it is archived.

"Additional parameters" tab


Here, you can specify additional parameters for the Media Publisher module.

 These settings affect all Media Publisher modules in your Product 360 - Media Manager system.

7.6 Run Product 360 - Media Manager server modules as a Windows service

 All non-local paths must be UNC paths on the workstation where the services are running. The user account for the service must have read and write permissions on these UNC paths:

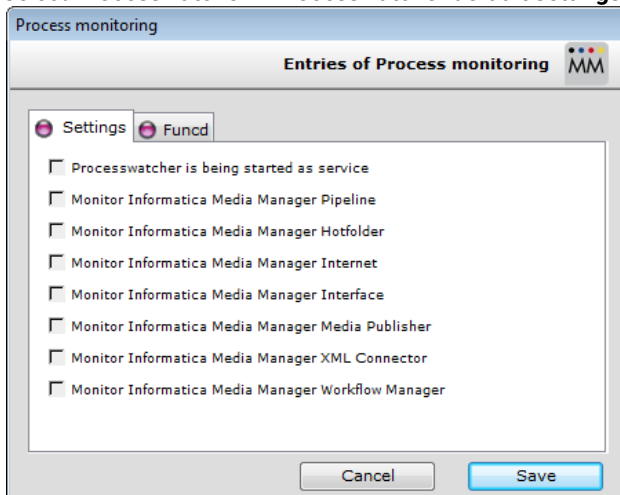
- Administration module: locale volume assignments
- Internet module: path to the working directories of this computer
- *Funcd working directories*

 When logging on to a machine where Product 360 - Media Manager programs run as service avoid using the account under which the services are executed. When you log off a machine all running services of the currently used account are stopped.

7.6.1 Run the native modules as services

1. Open the Process Watcher module.

2. Select **Processwatcher > Processwatcher default settings**.



3. Activate the **Processwatcher is being started as service** option.
4. Activate the modules to be monitored.
5. Click on **Save**.
6. Start the automatic mode for the Process Watcher module to check the settings.
7. Stop the automatic mode of Process Watcher.
8. Quit the application.
9. Quit all monitored modules.
10. Navigate to the directory where the Process Watcher module is installed, e.g. **C:\Program Files (x86)\Informatica Media Manager\opwatcher**.
11. Double-click on **MakeService.bat**.
12. Open the Microsoft service administration.
13. Open the properties of the **Infomatica Media Manager Process Watcher** service.
14. On the **General** tab set the startup type to **Automatic (delayed)**.
15. Switch to the **Log On** tab.
16. Activate **This account**.
17. Enter the user name and password.
18. Click on **OK**.
19. Start the service.

The settings of these automatic modules can be controlled in the Administration module with the control center.

 With **RemoveService.bat** the service can be deleted.

7.6.2 Run Tomcat as a service

1. Change **installService.bat** in folder **[YourWebServerInstallation]** with your used paths, e.g. set **OpasGWebServerPath=C:\OpasGWebServer**.
2. Open the command line (for Windows 7 or 2008 R2 server open in administrative mode).
3. Call **installService.bat** e.g. in the directory **C:\OpasGWebServer**.
4. Open the Microsoft service administration.
5. Open the properties of the **Informatica Media Manager Apache Tomcat** service.
6. On the **General** tab set the startup type to **Automatic (delayed)**.
7. Switch to the **Log On** tab.
8. Activate **This account**.
9. Enter the user name and password.
10. Click on **OK**.

11. Start the service.

 With **removeService.bat** the service can be deleted.

7.6.3 Run Session Manager as service

1. Open the command line (for Windows 7 or 2008 R2 server open in administrative mode).
2. Call **InstallApp-NT.bat** in directory **[YourWebServerInstallation]\XOBSessionManager\bin**, e.g. **C:\OpasGWebServer\XOBSessionManager\bin**.
3. Open the Microsoft service administration.
4. Open the properties of the **Informatica Media Manager Session Manager** service.
5. On the **General** tab set the startup type to **Automatic (delayed)**.
6. Switch to the **Log On** tab.
7. Activate **This account**.
8. Enter the user name and password.
9. Click on **OK**.
10. Start the service.

 With **UninstallApp-NT.bat** the service can be deleted.

7.7 Product 360 Core and PIM - Media Manager Configuration

7.7.1 Product 360 - Server

Integrating Product 360 - Media Manager

The usage of Product 360 - Media Manager as media asset provider for Product 360 - Server presumes that Product 360 - Media Manager version 8.0.5 has been installed. Please refer to the Product 360 - Media Manager installation manual for such an installation.

Product 360 - Media Manager is integrated into the Product 360 - Server by means of a plug-in. This plug-in is default installed and must be configured afterwards. The following chapters will explain this in detail.

Switching default media asset provider to Product 360 - Media Manager

In order that Product 360 - Server uses Product 360 - Media Manager as media asset provider, you have to switch the default media asset provider to Product 360 - Media Manager. This is performed in the C:\Informatica\server\configuration\HPM\server.properties file by setting the "mime.defaultProvider" parameter in the "Media Asset Server (MAS) Settings" section to "HMM":

```
#####
### Media Asset Server (MAS) Settings
# Defines the default provider for media assets which defines the source where to obtain the multimedia documents from(e.g.
HLR, HMM).
# MediaAssets are administered by a provider. A implement of provider is already included by standard HPM(Identifier=HLR).
# The identifier of provider is defined in its plugin.xml, see the Extension point
com.heiler.ppm.mediaasset.server.mediaAssetProvider.
# If no provider is explicit specified, then the here defined default provider will be used.
mime.defaultProvider = HMM
```

Configuring Product 360 - Media Manager

After the integration of the Product 360 - Media Manager plug-in, you have to configure the plug-in to your needs. The configuration should be performed in the C:\Informatica\server\configuration\HPM\hmm.properties file.

The parameters concerning the Product 360 - Media Manager configuration can be found in the "connection settings for the application server" section.

The following sections describe the configuration parameters.

Special characters

If a value contains unicode characters store them using escape sequences, e.g. \u00C4 for the German umlaut Ä.



Connection data

In order that Product 360 server can connect to Product 360 Media Manager, you have to specify the corresponding settings for Product 360 - Media Manager and it's database.

The following table lists the connection parameters:

MSSQL - Integrated security


If your security guidelines do not allow passwords in configuration files you can use integrated authentication on Windows operating systems. (MSSQL only)


Property	Description
hmm.login.supervisor.userName	Login name of the supervisor user at Media Manager who has all rights and will be mapped to the Product 360 administrator.
hmm.login.supervisor.password	Password of the supervisor user at Media Manager who has all rights . <div> If you want to encrypt the password please refer to chapter Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual.</div>
hmm.login.customer	Customer ID for the authentication at Product 360 - Media Manager.
hmm.db.url	Url of the Media Manager database which can be reached by Product 360. <div> It is possible to use an encrypted connection to the Media Manager database (MSSQL only). Append 'ssl=request' to your url. The url would look like <div>jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://localhost:1433/opasdb;ssl=request</div></div>

Property	Description
hmm.db.user	Login name at the Media Manager database which can be reached by Product 360. Might be empty if integrated authentication with MSSQL is used.
hmm.db.password	Password for the above mentioned user at the Media Manager database which can be reached by Product 360. Might be empty if integrated authentication with MSSQL is used.
hmm.db.type	Supported Product 360 - Media Manager database type. It must be one integer of the following values: 1: ORACLE 11g R2 and above; 2: MSSQL SERVER 2008 R2; 3: MSSQL SERVER 2012 and above
hmm.connection.poolsize	Size of connections pool per Product 360 user to Media Manager, default value is 10.
hmm.connection.timeoutSEC	Time out setting(in seconds) for each connection to Media Manager. The connection will be deteled after this period. Default value is 1800.

Shares

Product 360 - Server uses one share within the Product 360 - Media Manager system for accessing exported media assets. In order that Product 360 - Server can access this share, its path must be declared.




Property	Description
hmm.share.export	Path to the share containing the temporary exported zip file for images. This share must provide read-write access to application server.
<div>  Removed since Product 360_8.0.03 </div>	

 Please note that the local directories of the shares might not (yet) exist. Usually the Product 360 - Server creates these directories on the first start, but for this configuration step you would need to do this manually to be able to create the share on them.

Notification queue


If Product 360 - Server should use the master asset functionality of Product 360 - Media Manager, Product 360 - Server must keep itself informed about asset changes in Product 360 - Media Manager by listening to corresponding notification queues.


In order that this mechanism works, the following parameters have to be configured:

Property	Description
hmm.jms.connection.url	<p>Connection URL to Media Manager JMS server which replaces the old settings for notification queue. An error message for unreachable JMS server is only ensured with the transport options "initialReconnectDelay" and "maxReconnectAttempts".</p> <div>  Example hmm.jms.connection.url = failover:(tcp://JMSServer:61616?wireFormat.maxInactivityDuration=0)?initialReconnectDelay=2000&maxReconnectAttempts=2 </div>
hmm.jms.connection.username	<p>Optional property as the name for the authentication user during connection to the Media Manager JMS server. They are only necessary if the user should be authorized to connect to the Media Manager JMS server.</p> <div>  This property is introduced only for the cloud solution, therefore it is currently not available since the media manager still connects to JMS server without authorization mechanism. </div>
hmm.jms.connection.password	<p>Optional property as the password for the authentication user during connection to the Media Manager JMS server. They are only necessary if the user should be authorized to connect to the Media Manager JMS server.</p> <div>  This property is introduced only for the cloud solution, therefore it is currently not available since the media manager still connects to JMS server without authorization mechanism. </div>

Write access

If Product 360 - Server should be supported with the write access of Product 360 - Media Manager, the following parameters have to be configured:

Property	Description
hmm.supportsWrite	<p>Set this to false, If the write access of media manager Provider should not be supported. Please note, that there is not granular distinction. Either the Provider supports FULL write support (Upload, Removing files and categories...) or doesn't support write at all.</p> <div>  Default value true </div>

Property	Description
hmm.defaultCategoryId	<p>The identifier of default category(usually names "Unassigned") which stores all images that are not assigned to other categories.</p> <div>  The default category id can be fetched by calling the following sql statement from the Media Manager database: select IHIE_ID from F_IMGHIER where IHIE_NAME = 'Unassigned' </div>

Additional language packages

If you have installed additional language packages (refer to appendix "i18n language packages" for more information), you will have to add respective mappings into the `hmm.properties` file. This is due to the fact that Product 360 -Server works with locales and Product 360 - Media Manager with language numbers.

The mapping entries must look like this:

```
# Mapping from Locales to Media Manager language numbers
hmm.locale.en_US=0
```



- A setting with false value can cause fatal error by fetching asset information form Media Manager!
- locale must be an enum entry defined in the enumeration "Enum.Language".

Tip: The language numbers are defined in the "Informatica Product 360 Media Manager Administration". You can retrieve a list of the language numbers from by selecting "System" -> "Manage languages" in the native application "Informatica Product 360 Media Manager Administration"

Miscellaneous

The following table lists all other parameters for the configuration of the Product 360 - Media Manager plug-in:

Property	Description	Default value
hmm.maxCountOfIdsInOneThread	<p>Maximum count of ids which are sent as parameter to corresponding connector API call that can be run with multi-threading. This value can be adjusted in real time for a better performance.</p> <p>For more detailed information please visit the section "Media Asset Parallel Management" of chapter "Tuning advisory" in [OpertationManual].</p>	1000
hmm.numberOfThreads.initValue	<p>This setting defines the initial vlaue for the number of threads which are used for calling media asset parallel operations. Default value is 1, therefore this initial value should be adjusted according to the corresponding hardware and media manager configuration(e.g. number of hmm port). After start of the Product 360 - Server, the value of numberOfThread can be also changed by JMX tooling in real time.</p>	1

Property	Description	Default value
hmm.maxNumberOfDisplayableObjects	Maximum number of the from Product 360 - Media Manager loadable media objects pro search, no matter what default value in the Product 360 - Media Manager system parameters.	10000
defaultquality	The default image quality. This parameter is only needed when using the master asset functionality of Product 360 - Media Manager.	original image
hmm.exportMediaAsset.defaultWithLoggedInUser	<p>Specifies whether the logged in user will be used as default while exporting media asset information from the Media Manager.</p> <p>If it is set as true, then only the media assets will be exported, which can be accessed by the logged in user who runs the export job. Otherwise the media assets will be exported, which can be accessed by the defined system user(system user has the access level of the Media Manager user defined with the "hmm.login.supervisor.userName").</p>	true
hmm.exportMediaAsset.uncpath.separator	<p>Specifies which separator should be used in the unc path returned from the corresponding methods of Media Manager provider for export. Default is the backslash("\\"), if you want to use the unc path directly under Unix system, please set it with the slash("/")</p>	\\

Auto Assignment

All settings for Auto Assignment and Auto path resolution please visit the page: [Configurations for Auto Assignment](#)

Configuration example of Product 360 - Media Manager

Example for hmm.properties(without auto assignment configurations)
<pre>##### ### connection settings for the application server ### ----- ### Connection data # # supervisor user in media manager with all rights</pre>

[illegible]

```

### Additional language packages
#
# Mapping from Locales to HMM language numbers
# Caution: a setting with false value can cause fatal error by fetching asset information form HMM!
# Tip: The language numbers are not fix, but are set by the "Product 360 - Media Manager Administration".
# You can retrieve a list of the language numbers from by selecting System > Manage languages in the native application
"Product 360 - Media Manager Administration"
hmm.locale.en_US=0
#
### -----
### Miscellaneous
#
# maximum count of ids which are send as parameter to corresponding XOB Call that can be run with multi-threading
hmm.maxCountOfIdsInOneThread = 1000
#
# Initial value for the number of threads which are used for all media asset parallel operations.
# Default is 1, therefore this initial value should be adjusted according to the corresponding hardware and media portal
configuration(e.g. number of hmm port).
# After start of the hpm server, the value of numberOfThread can be also changed by JMX tooling in real time.
hmm.numberOfThread.initValue =1
#
# This properties defines the maximum number of the from HMM server loadable media objects pro search, no matter what
default value in the HMM system parameters.
hmm.maxNumberOfDisplayableObjects = 10000
#
# The default quality(master asset) of the provider
defaultquality=originalimage
#
# Specifies whether the logged in user will be used as default while exporting media asset information from the Media
Manager.
# false - the media assets will be exported, which can be accessed by the defined system user(system user has the access
level of the Media Manager user defined with the "hmm.login.supervisor.userName").
# true - default / only the media assets will be exported, which can be accessed by the logged in user who runs the export
job.
hmm.exportMediaAsset.defaultWithLoggedInUser=true
#
# Specifies which separator should be used in the unc path returned from the corresponding methods of Media Manager provider
for export.
# Default is the backslash("\\"), if you want to use the unc path directly under Unix system, please set it with the
slash("/")
hmm.exportMediaasset.uncpath.separator =\\

```

Using Product 360 - Media Manager with master assets and derivates

Product 360 supports the master asset business logic provided by Product 360 - Media Manager.

This implies that Product 360 - Server must be informed about new derivate shemas or changes in existing derivative shemas performed in the integrated Product 360 - Media Manager. Product 360 - Media Manager keeps Product 360 - Server informed about such changes by putting respective notifications into its notification queues.

Product 360 - Server can obtain these notifications by means of a listener listening to this notification queue. In order that this mechanism works, the notification queue parameters as well as the `defaultquality` parameter must be correctly set in the `hmm.properties` file.




After Product 360 - Server has collected or successfully consumed a notification, the notification is removed from the notification queue.


There are several notifications which can currently be processed by the Product 360 - Server. It is necessary that you check that the following notification queue events are configured in the workflow manager of Product 360 - Media Manager:

- **Notifications from the queue "heiler.hmm.backend.event"**
 - **Changed derivative schema (name)** The listener listens to the notification queue on the topic "ModifyDerivativeSchema" for a "F_DERIVATE.DEV_ID" which has to be a number (the number of the changed derivative schema id). The listener triggers only a change of the derivative schema name in the "MediaAssetQualityEnumeration".
 - **New derivative schema** The listener listens to the notification queue on the topic "NewDerivativeSchema" for a "F_DERIVATE.DEV_ID" which has to be a number (the number of the new created derivative schema id). The listener triggers a creation of new media asset documents on a media asset if this media asset has a mapped master asset and the derivative of this asset is just calculated by the pipeline. Furthermore, the listener triggers an update of the "MediaAssetQualityEnumeration".
 - **Delete derivative** The listener listens to the notification queue on the topic "DeleteDerivative" for a "F_DERIVATE.DEV_ID" which has to be a number (the number of a derivative schema id) and for the "F_IMGKOMP.PKOM_PNR" (the master asset identifier). The listener triggers a deletion of all to Product 360 object assigned media asset document for the corresponding master asset identifier and quality(derivative schema id). Typically this notification is sent if the pipeline has deleted a derivative.
- **Notifications from the queue "heiler.hmm.backend.event.assignment"**
 - **Assign document** The server job "AssignDocumentJob" picks the next message up from the notification queue, if it has the topic "AssignDocument" with a property "F_IMGKOMP.PKOM_PNR" which has to be a string(the identifier of the media asset), a "F_IMGKOMP.PIMG_SOURCE_FILENAME" which has to be a string(the name of the media asset), and a "F_IMGKOMP.PIMG_CATALOG_ID" which has to be a string(the identifier of the catalog), the the server job triggers an assignment of corresponding media asset document to a Product 360 catalog object.
 - **New derivative of a media asset** The server job "AssignDocumentJob" picks the next message up from the notification queue, if it has the topic "NewDerivative" with a property "F_DERIVATE.DEV_ID" which has to be a number (the number of a derivative schema id) and a "F_IMGKOMP.PKOM_PNR" which has to be a string(the master asset identifier). The server job triggers a creation of a new media asset document on the media assets which contain the master asset identifier in a media asset document which has the master asset quality (e.g. originalimage). Typically this notification is sent if the pipeline has rendered a derivative quality.
- **Notifications from the queue "heiler.hmm.backend.event.assetModified"**
 - **Asset modified** The server job "UpdateModifiedAssetJob" picks the next message up from the notification queue, if it has the topic "AssetModified" with a property "F_IMGKOMP.PKOM_PNR" which has to be a string(the identifier of the changed media asset), the server job triggers the update of the "modificationTimestamp" for the corresponding media asset documents, media assets and assigned objects(item, product and structure group).

There are example workflows existing which can be imported into the Product 360 - Media Manager workflow manager.

 The corresponding example workflows contains also another useful workflows which should be adjusted and imported into the Product 360 - Media Manager workflow manager. Especially the workflow "Automatic group assignment" should be activated to automatically assign all unassigned images(images which are not assigned to any other category) to the default category. For more details information please visit the page [Media Manager Workflows](#).

How to work with workflows and how to change and modify workflows inside the workflow manager is described in the Product 360 - Media Manager manual and is only supported by the Product 360 - Media Manager consulting and support teams.

 To enable the message queue on the Product 360 - Media Manager side you have to start the activemq script on the Product 360 - Media Manager server by executing the startup.bat.

Adding new media asset attribute(property field) to the repository

The Product 360 - Server has read/write access to the media asset attributes of Product 360 - Media Manager.

Since the configuration of the Product 360 - Server repository is adjusted to the current state of supported media asset attributes, it might be necessary to add some (user defined) attributes.

! Only the property field(meta data definition) of Product 360 - Media Manager can be added in Product 360 core in this way!

This chapter describes how you can do this. It is assumed that you have installed the repository editor from the setup archive

PIM_<Version>_Rev-<Revision>_repoEdit_<OS>.zip, e.g.

PIM_8.0.00.00_Rev-12345_repoEdit_win32.zip

To add new media asset attributes to the Product 360 - Server repository, perform the following steps:

Add new media asset attribute(property field) for media asset file

Please visit the following page for detailed information: Bring Media Manager property field in media asset file views of PIM desktop.

Add new media asset attribute(property field) for media asset document

1. Open the C:\Informatica\server\configuration\HPM\Repository.repository file in the repository editor.
2. In the "types" area, add an new field type under the entity type "MediaAssetDocumentAttributesType".

i Note: The value of "Persistence XPath" is the identifier of corresponding Product 360 - Media Manager field, e.g. "F_IMGITEM.IMI_ITEM1" is the identifier for the first meta data value of asset, and so on.

The screenshot shows the repository editor interface. On the left, a tree view lists various field types under 'MediaAssetDocumentAttributesType', including 'LicenseFreeHMM'. The 'LicenseFreeHMM' field type is selected. On the right, the configuration table for this field type is displayed. The table has columns for 'Property' and 'Value'. The 'Persistence XPath' property is set to 'F_IMGITEM.IMI_ITEM1'. The 'Physical Column Is Big' property is set to 'false'. Below the configuration table, there is a section for 'Field Param mediaAssetProvider' with a value of 'HMM'.

Property	Value
Identifier	MediaAssetDocumentAttributesType.LicenseFreeHMM
Inactive	true
Object Name	licenseFreeHMM
Proxy Transition Entity Type	
Persistence	
Fragment Column Access	
Persistence Class Name	java.lang.String
Persistence Model Class	
Persistence XPath	F_IMGITEM.IMI_ITEM1
Physical Column Is Big	false

Field Param mediaAssetProvider	Value
Field Type	MediaAssetDocumentAttributesType.LicenseFreeHMM (licenseFreeHMM)
Identifier	MediaAssetDocumentAttributes.LicenseFreeHMM
Value	

3. In the "custom" area, add an new field of the defined field type under the entity "MediaAssetDocumentAttributes".

! Currently only read access is supported for the fields under the entity "MediaAssetDocumentAttributes", therefore the corresponding "Editable" property has to be set with "false".

i Note: Add a field parameter under the field which has as key "mediaAssetProvider" and as value: "HMM" (this is necessary for the automatic detection of the necessary fields by the Product 360 - Server)

The screenshot shows the repository editor interface. On the left, a tree view lists various field types under 'MediaAssetDocumentAttributes', including 'License free'. The 'License free' field type is selected. On the right, the configuration table for this field type is displayed. The table has columns for 'Property' and 'Value'. The 'Documentation' property is set to 'mediaAssetProvider'. The 'Name' property is set to 'HMM'. The 'Value' property is set to 'HMM'.

Property	Value
Documentation	mediaAssetProvider
Name	HMM
Value	HMM

4. Add the respective field identifier with the language dependent name for each added field to the C:
\\Informatica\\server\\configuration\\HPM\\Repository.properties_[language key] (e.g. C:
\\Informatica\\server\\configuration\\HPM\\Repository.properties_en) files.

Note: Since Product 360 version 7.0.03 the media asset attribute with type "multiple selection list" can be also shown in Product 360 - Desktop client, for that the "Upper Bound" of the corresponding field type in repository must be set as "-1".

7.7.2 Product 360 - Desktop Client

The respective plug-in on the client side which integrates the Media Manager web view in Product 360 Desktop, is not supported in standard Product 360 solution any more. If any regular customer has always such request, please contact your administrator or our support.

7.8 Prevent deletion of assets used in Product 360

7.8.1 Installing the master asset support web services

Product 360 - Server provides two web services used by Product 360 - Media Manager, "isDerivationDefinitionInUse" and "isMediaAssetInUse".

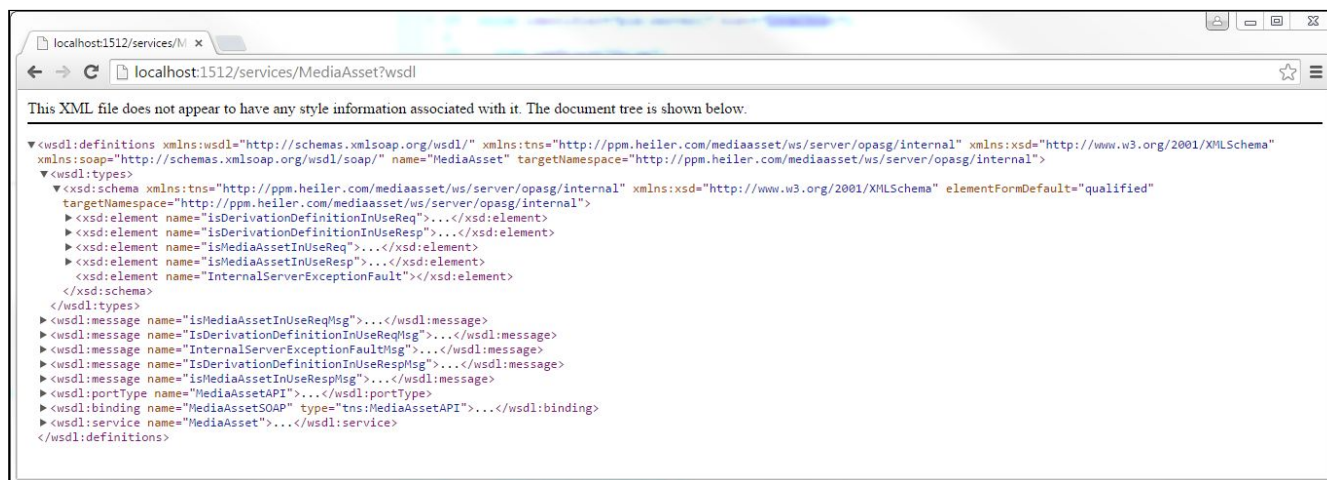
To ensure that these are activated in Product 360, you have to check that the plugin com.heiler.ppm.mediaasset.ws.server.opasg is located in the C:\\Informatica\\server\\plugins folder.

To check if the web services are available after the Product 360 - Server starts, enter the corresponding URL in your browser:

http://{host}:{port}/services/MediaAsset?wsdl

The value of the {host} and {port} are defined in NetworkConfig.xml. E.g. if the server node has a "host" attribute with "localhost" and the "http port" is set as 1512, then the URL will be http://localhost:1512/services/MediaAsset?wsdl

And the result should be:



7.8.2 Media Manager Web

Enable the connection between the Media Manager Web application and Product 360 Server in the config file OpasGWebServer\Tomcat\webapps\opas\conf\HPMConfig.xml

Setup

```
<HPM_REST_active input="ON" />
```

to enable the REST service check.

The following values are required in addition

```
<HPM_REST_SERVER input="http://P360_SERVER:P360_REST_PORT/" />
<HPM_REST_USER input="restUser" />
<HPM_REST_PASSWORD input="restUserPassword" />
```

The REST Service returns the used Product 360 objects for a asset. If the asset if used in Product 360 the web application do not allows to delete the asset.

7.9 Media Manager Workflows

7.9.1 Content

This chapter describes how you can import and configure the different workflow examples into the workflow module of the Media Manager. These workflows are needed for the communication between the Product 360 server and the Media Manager.

The example files are located in the folder **WorkFlowExamples** of the file PIM_<Version>_MediaManager.zip from your Product 360 distribution.

7.9.2 Import

- Start the application "Workflow Manager - Informatica Media Manager" and activate the administration mode.
- Select the menu entry "Management of Workflows" in the menu "Master data".
- Click on the button "Import Workflow".
- Select a xml file and click ok.

7.9.3 Workflow: MessageQueue Asset created (AssignDocs)

Filename	Location
MessageQueue_Asset_created_(AssignDocs).xml\Examples\Workflow (Media Manager)

This workflow listens on the event asset created. After this event an entry in the message queue will be created, which will be consumed from the Product 360 server to create (or update) an assignment.

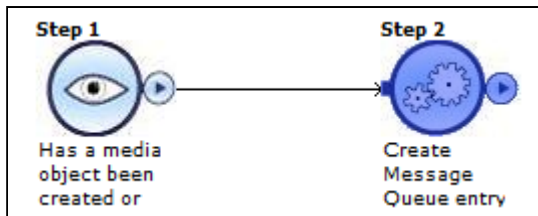


Step	Value(s)	Change Value(s)	Comment
Definition	<WRFD_STATION>1</WRFD_STATION>	YES	ID of the Media Manager Application Server where the Workflow Module is running in the automatic mode.
Step 1	D120001	YES	Select the correct client, which stores the Product 360 assets.
Step 2	tcp://localhost:61616 heiler.hmm.backend.event AssignDocument F_IMGKOMP.PKOM_PNR	YES NO NO NO	Replace the computer name localhost with the name of the computer where the MessageQueue is running.

7.9.4 Workflow: MessageQueue Asset modified

Filename	Location
MessageQueue_Asset_modified.xml\Examples\Workflow (Media Manager)

This workflow listens on the event asset modified or created. After one of those events an entry in the message queue will be created, which will be consumed from the Product 360 server to update the assigned asset informations.

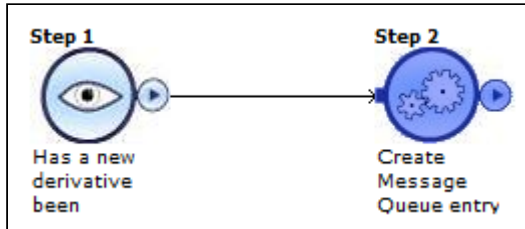


Step	Value(s)	Change Value(s)	Comment
Definition	<WRFD_STATION>1</WRFD_STATION>	YES	ID of the Media Manager Application Server where the Workflow Module is running in the automatic mode.
Step 1	D120001	YES	Select the correct client, which stores the Product 360 assets.
Step 2	tcp://localhost:61616 heiler.hmm.backend.event AssetModified F_IMGKOMP.PKOM_PNR	YES NO NO NO	Replace the computer name localhost with the name of the computer where the MessageQueue is running.

7.9.5 Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative created

Filename	Location
MessageQueue_Derivative_created.xml\Examples\Workflow (Media Manager)

This workflow listens on the event derivative created. After this event an entry in the message queue will be created, which will be consumed from the Product 360 server to add the derivatives to the assigned documents.

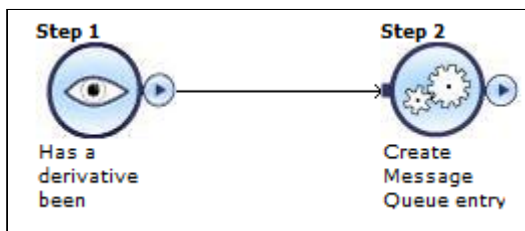


Step	Value(s)	Change Value(s)	Comment
Definition	<WRFD_STATION>1</WRFD_STATION>	YES	ID of the Media Manager Application Server where the Workflow Module is running in the automatic mode.
Step 1	D120001	YES	Select the correct client, which stores the Product 360 assets.
Step 2	tcp://localhost:61616 heiler.hmm.backend.event NewDerivative F_IMGKOMP.PKOM_PNR F_DERIVATE.DEV_ID	YES NO NO NO	Replace the computer name localhost with the name of the computer where the MessageQueue is running.

7.9.6 Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative deleted

Filename	Location
MessageQueue_Derivative_deleted.xml\Examples\Workflow (Media Manager)

This workflow listens on the event derivative deleted. After this event an entry in the message queue will be created, which will be consumed from the Product 360 server to delete this derivative from the assigned documents.

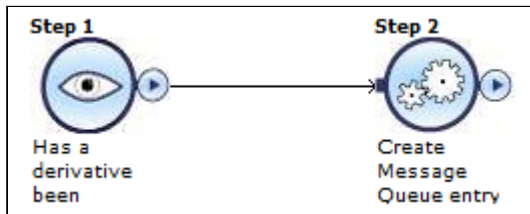


Step	Value(s)	Change Value(s)	Comment
Definition	<WRFD_STATION>1</WRFD_STATION>	YES	ID of the Media Manager Application Server where the Workflow Module is running in the automatic mode.
Step 1	D120001	YES	Select the correct client, which stores the Product 360 assets.
Step 2	tcp://localhost:61616 heiler.hmm.backend.event DeleteDerivative F_IMGKOMP.PKOM_PNR F_DERIVATE.DEV_ID	YES NO NO NO	Replace the computer name localhost with the name of the computer where the MessageQueue is running.

7.9.7 Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative modified

Filename	Location
MessageQueue Derivative modified\Examples\Workflow (Media Manager)

This workflow listens on the event derivative modified. After this event an entry in the message queue will be created, which will be consumed from the Product 360 server to modify this derivative at the assigned documents.



Step	Value(s)	Change Value(s)	Comment
Definition	<WRFD_STATION>1</WRFD_STATION>	YES	ID of the Media Manager Application Server where the Workflow Module is running in the automatic mode.
Step 1	D120001	YES	Select the correct client, which stores the Product 360 assets.
Step 2	tcp://localhost:61616 heiler.hmm.backend.event NewDerivative F_IMGKOMP.PKOM_PNR F_DERIVATE.DEV_ID	YES NO NO NO	Replace the computer name localhost with the name of the computer where the MessageQueue is running.

7.9.8 Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative definition created

Filename	Location
MessageQueue_Derivative_definition_created.xml\Examples\Workflow (Media Manager)

This workflow listens on the event derivative definition created. After this event an entry in the message queue will be created, which will be consumed from the Product 360 server to register this new definition..

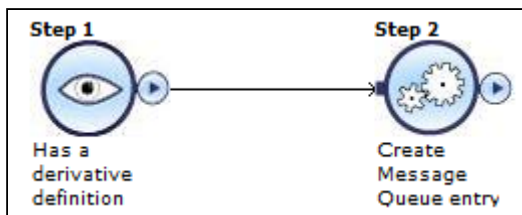


Step	Value(s)	Change Value(s)	Comment
Definition	<WRFD_STATION>1</WRFD_STATION>	YES	ID of the Media Manager Application Server where the Workflow Module is running in the automatic mode.
Step 1	D120001	YES	Select the correct client, which stores the Product 360 assets.
Step 2	tcp://localhost:61616 heiler.hmm.backend.event NewDerivativeSchema F_DERIVATE.DEV_ID	YES NO NO NO	Replace the computer name localhost with the name of the computer where the MessageQueue is running.

7.9.9 Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative definition deleted

Filename	Location
MessageQueue_Derivative_definition_deleted.xml\Examples\Workflow (Media Manager)

This workflow listens on the event derivative definition deleted. After this event an entry in the message queue will be created, which will be consumed from the Product 360 server to unregister this definition..

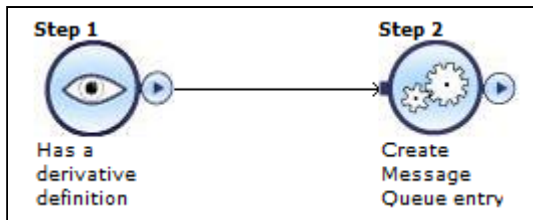


Step	Value(s)	Change Value(s)	Comment
Definition	<WRFD_STATION>1</WRFD_STATION>	YES	ID of the Media Manager Application Server where the Workflow Module is running in the automatic mode.
Step 1	D120001	YES	Select the correct client, which stores the Product 360 assets.
Step 2	tcp://localhost:61616 heiler.hmm.backend.event DeleteDerivativeSchema F_DERIVATE.DEV_ID	YES NO NO NO	Replace the computer name localhost with the name of the computer where the MessageQueue is running.

7.9.10 Workflow: MessageQueue Derivative definition modified

Filename	Location
MessageQueue_Derivative_definition_modified.xml\Examples\Workflow (Media Manager)

This workflow listens on the event derivative definition modified. After this event an entry in the message queue will be created, which will be consumed from the Product 360 server to modify this definition..

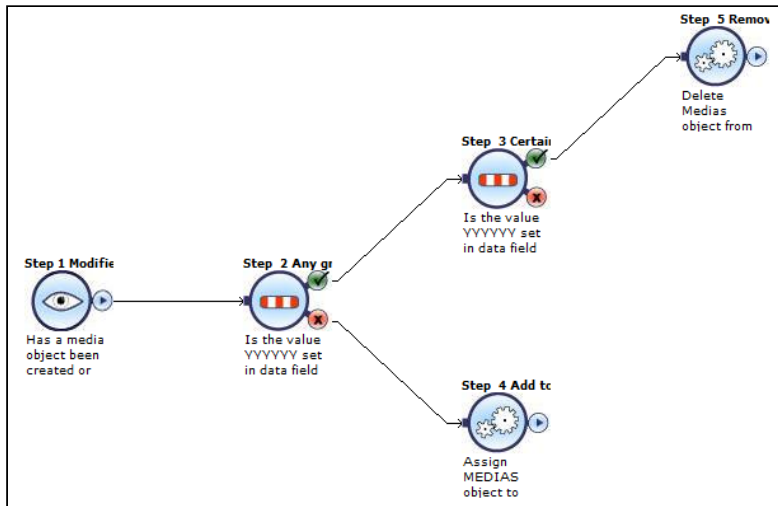


Step	Value(s)	Change Value(s)	Comment
Definition	<WRFD_STATION>1</WRFD_STATION>	YES	ID of the Media Manager Application Server where the Workflow Module is running in the automatic mode.
Step 1	D120001	YES	Select the correct client, which stores the Product 360 assets.
Step 2	tcp://localhost:61616 heiler.hmm.backend.event ModifyDerivativeSchema F_DERIVATE.DEV_ID	YES NO NO NO	Replace the computer name localhost with the name of the computer where the MessageQueue is running.

7.9.11 Workflow: Automatic group assignment

Filename	Location
Automatic_group_assignment.xml\Examples\Workflow (Media Manager)

This workflow listens on the event asset modified or created. After that event it will be checked whether it is assigned to any group. If not it is added to the group "Unassigned" otherwise it is removed from the group "Unassigned".



Step	Value(s)	Change Value(s)	Comment
Definition	<WRFD_STATION>1</WRFD_STATION>	YES	ID of the Media Manager Application Server where the Workflow Module is running in the automatic mode.
Step 1	D120001	YES	Select the correct client, which stores the Product 360 assets.
Step 2	'1' 1 F_IMGKOMP, F_IMGKOHI F_IMGKOHI.IMHI_PNR = F_IMGKOMP.PKOM_PNR	NO NO NO NO	Sql statement to check if there is any group assignment for this asset.
Step 3	'1' 1 F_IMGKOMP, F_IMGKOHI F_IMGKOHI.IMHI_PNR = F_IMGKOMP.PKOM_PNR and not(F_IMGKOHI.IMHI_IHIE_ID like '006400000000%')	NO NO NO YES	Sql statement to check if there is a group assignment for this asset, but not group with the id; 006400000000..... The string 006400000000 has to be adapted to your system group id,

Step	Value(s)	Change Value(s)	Comment
Step 4	00640000000.....	YES	Remove assignment from the unassigned group, This group id has to be changed.
Step 5	00640000000.....	YES	Assignment the asset to the unassigned group, This group id has to be changed.

8 Supplier Portal Configuration

In this manual, configuration settings for Product 360 - Supplier Portal are described.

8.1 Configuration Setup and General Description

All configuration properties can be defined in a single property file - the path of the configuration file is defined in the settings of your application server and is passed as argument to the Product 360 - Supplier Portal war file. The default is **<P360_SUPPLIER_PORTAL_INSTALLATION_ROOT>/configuration** directory in the Product 360 - Supplier Portal installation package.



Please keep in mind, that every '**properties**' file (ending with ***.properties**) will be read and all contained properties will be imported (e.g. if you have a copy of the **configuration.properties** file which also ends with ***.properties** and its properties are changed, this could lead to unpredictable property values of the Product 360 - Supplier Portal system).
Therefore it is highly recommended to have only one properties file in the configuration folder.

The application has to be restarted on the application server in order to have changes take effect. It is recommended to always restart the Tomcat instead of restarting the webapp only. This is to avoid PermGen Out of Memory errors.

The configuration file itself contains properties following the standard "key: value" pattern.


If a configuration property is not set in the configuration properties file, the default value from the war file is taken.

8.1.1 Property Description

The following tables contain a complete list of all properties available in Product 360 - Supplier Portal, grouped by functionality. Each property is described with further explanation and examples.

If a property uses cron expressions, you can have a look at <http://www.quartz-scheduler.org/documentation/quartz-1.x/tutorials/crontrigger> for further information.

Database settings	
database.type	<p>Database type, see http://activiti.org/userguide/#supporteddatabases Mainly used for Activiti and Database creation:</p> <p>oracle</p> <p>mssql</p> <p>h2</p> <p>Default: mssql</p>

database.name	<p>MSSQL: Name of the created database e.g. database.name=hsx_1.4</p> <p>Oracle: SID or ServiceName of the Oracle DB e.g. database.name=XE</p> <p>Default: database.name=hsx_1.4</p>
database.server	<p>Hostname of the database server</p> <p>Default: database.server=localhost</p>
database.port	<p>Port number of the database server</p> <p>Default: MSSQL default is database.port=1433</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #fde725; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> If you want to connect P360 Supplier Portal to an Oracle Database via TCPS, please refer to chapter "How to configure Oracle TCPS connection for P360 Supplier Portal" in the "Supplier Portal Configuration" manual.</p> </div>
database.username	<p>User name for the database connection</p> <p>CAUTION: Oracle needs the username in uppercase letters.</p>
database.password	<p>Password for the database connection</p>
database.systemUser	<p>Only for ORACLE Database Installation.</p> <p>User which has the permission to create other users/tablespaces, is needed only to run the database creation script, feel free to remove this property after successfull script execution.</p> <p>e.g. database.systemUser=SYSTEM</p>
database.systemUser	<p>Only for ORACLE Database Installation.</p> <p>password for the above specified database system user</p>
database.data.dir	<p>Specifies the operating-system path to the database data file.</p>

database.data.size	<p>Oracle:</p> <p>Specify the size of the database data tablespace file in bytes. Use K, M, G, or T to specify the size in kilobytes, megabytes, gigabytes, or terabytes. Specify a whole number; do not include a decimal.</p> <p>MSSQL:</p> <p>Is the initial size of the database data file. The kilobyte (KB), megabyte (MB), gigabyte (GB), or terabyte (TB) suffixes can be used. The default is MB. Specify a whole number; do not include a decimal. The minimum value for size is 512 KB.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>database.data.size=128MB</p>
database.data.size.growth	<p>Oracle:</p> <p>specify the size in bytes of the next increment of disk space to be allocated automatically when more extents are required. Use K, M, G, or T to specify the size in kilobytes, megabytes, gigabytes, or terabytes. Specify a whole number; do not include a decimal.</p> <p>MSSQL:</p> <p>Specifies the growth increment of the databases data file. It is the amount of space added to the database data file each time new space is needed. Specify a whole number; do not include a decimal. A value of 0 indicates no growth. The value can be specified in MB, KB, GB, TB, or percent (%). If a number is specified without an MB, KB, or % suffix, the default is MB. When % is specified, the growth increment size is the specified percentage of the size of the database data file at the time the increment occurs.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>database.data.size.growth=64MB</p>
database.log.dir	<p>Only for MSSQL Database Installation.</p> <p>Specifies the operating-system path to the database log file.</p>
database.log.size	<p>Only for MSSQL Database Installation.</p> <p>Is the initial size of the database log file. The kilobyte (KB), megabyte (MB), gigabyte (GB), or terabyte (TB) suffixes can be used. The default is MB. Specify a whole number; do not include a decimal. The minimum value for size is 512 KB.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>database.log.size=128MB</p>

database.log .size.growth	<p>Only for MSSQL Database Installation.</p> <p>Specifies the growth increment of the databases log file. It is the amount of space added to the database log file each time new space is needed. Specify a whole number; do not include a decimal. A value of 0 indicates no growth.</p> <p>The value can be specified in MB, KB, GB, TB, or percent (%). If a number is specified without an MB, KB, or % suffix, the default is MB. When % is specified, the growth increment size is the specified percentage of the size of the database log file at the time the increment occurs.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>database.log.size.growth=64MB</p>
database.tem p.dir	<p>Only for ORACLE Database Installation.</p> <p>Specifies the operating-system path to the database temporary tablespace file.</p>
database.tem p.size	<p>Only for ORACLE Database Installation.</p> <p>Specify the size of the database temporary tablespace file in bytes. Use K, M, G, or T to specify the size in kilobytes, megabytes, gigabytes, or terabytes. Specify a whole number; do not include a decimal.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>database.temp.size=128MB</p>
database.tem p.size.gro wth	<p>Only for ORACLE Database Installation.</p> <p>specify the size in bytes of the next increment of disk space to be allocated automatically when more extents are required.</p> <p>Use K, M, G, or T to specify the size in kilobytes, megabytes, gigabytes, or terabytes. Specify a whole number; do not include a decimal.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>database.temp.size.growth=64MB</p>
database.ind ex.dir	<p>Only for ORACLE Database Installation.</p> <p>Specifies the operating-system path to the database index tablespace data file.</p>
database.ind ex.size	<p>Only for ORACLE Database Installation.</p> <p>Specify the size of the database index tablespace data file in bytes. Use K, M, G, or T to specify the size in kilobytes, megabytes, gigabytes, or terabytes. Specify a whole number; do not include a decimal.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>database.data.size=128MB</p>

database.inde x.size.grow th	<p>Only for ORACLE Database Installation.</p> <p>specify the size in bytes of the next increment of disk space to be allocated automatically when more extents are required. Use K, M, G, or T to specify the size in kilobytes, megabytes, gigabytes, or terabytes. Specify a whole number; do not include a decimal.</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>database.data.size.growth=64MB</p>
database.url	<p>JDBC database URL connection string. Generally starts with "jdbc:". Examples:</p> <p>jdbc:oracle:thin:@databaseServer:1521:sid</p> <p>jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://databaseServer:1433;DatabaseName=HENRI</p> <p>jdbc:h2:~/ .hsp/database/dev;FILE_LOCK=NO'</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>automatically set though database.type declaration.</p> <p>\${database.url}.\${database.type}}</p>
database.dri verClassNa me	<p>Java class name of the JDBC driver to use. See the JDBC driver manual for details. Supported values are:</p> <p>oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver</p> <p>net.sourceforge.jtds.jdbc.Driver</p> <p>org.h2.Driver</p> <p>Default: automatically set though database.type declaration.</p> <p>database.driverClassName=\${database.driverClassName}.\${database.type}}</p>
persistence. xmlLocation	<p>Location pointing to the Hibernate XML configuration file. This is a SPRING resource path, more information: http://static.springsource.org/spring/docs/current/spring-framework-reference/html/resources.html</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>file:///C:/Informatica/SupplierPortal/configuration/persistence-mssql.xml</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>persistence.xmlLocation=file:///\${hsx.configurationArea}/persistence-\${database.type}.xml</p> <p>where <u>\${hsx.configurationArea}</u> and <u>\${database.type}</u> are variables which get replaced on runtime.</p>
persistence. unitName	<p>Name of the Hibernate persistence unit. Same as defined in persistence.xml. Example</p> <p>default</p> <p>Default: default</p>

Database connection pool settings (since 8.0.6.02)	<p>Settings for the database connection pool. Typically, Supplier Portal doesn't execute expensive and long lasting operations on database level (import jobs are handled in Product 360 server). However, for high load scenarios with many concurrent users, the defaults should be updated. Detailed explanation of the ObjectPool parameters: https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-pool/api-1.6/org/apache/commons/pool/impl/GenericObjectPool.html</p> <p># Maximum number of active connections that can be allocated at the same time database.pool.maxActive=8</p> <p># Maximum number of connections that can remain idle database.pool.maxIdle=8</p> <p># Minimum number of idle connections in the pool database.pool.minIdle=0</p> <p># Maximum amount of time (in milliseconds) the borrowObject method should block before throwing an exception when the pool is exhausted. Use -1 to make the pool wait indefinitely. database.pool.maxWait=-1</p> <p># Whether or not the pool will validate objects before they are borrowed from the pool database.pool.testOnBorrow=true</p> <p># Whether or not the pool will validate objects before they are returned to the pool database.pool.testOnReturn=false</p> <p># The SQL query that will be used to validate connections from this pool before returning them to the caller.</p> <p># MSSQL Server database.pool.validationQuery=select 1</p> <p># H2 #database.pool.validationQuery=select 1</p> <p># Oracle #database.pool.validationQuery=select 1 from dual</p>
--	---

Import settings	
import.autoImportDefault	<p>Configures the default auto import policy. New suppliers (invited or registered) get this value as default. It can be changed in the UI by the portal administrator.</p> <p>Options are</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MANUAL_IMPORT • AUTO_IMPORT_NO_ERRORS • AUTO_IMPORT_NO_WARNINGS <p>Default: MANUAL_IMPORT</p>
import.automaticImportExecutionDelay	<p>Can be configured at supplier level to trigger an import after a successful test run. The execution is delayed by the given number of milliseconds.</p>
restartUploadWizardWhenFinished	<p>Configures what happens to suppliers once they finished uploading their data. If set to false, user will be brought to the timeline after clicking through the upload wizard. If set to true, the wizard will start from the beginning with the same catalog context.</p>

HPM settings	
--------------	--

hpm.restUri	REST base URL to Product 360 - Server. For host name and web server port see your Product 360 - Server configuration. Example: http://hpmServer:1501/rest
hpm.systemUserName	Internal HPM user name that is used to trigger Product 360 - Server communication (e.g. start a test run) for supplier users. For all communication triggered by portal admins the corresponding Product 360 - Server credentials are being used.
hpm.systemUserPassword	Internal Product 360 - Server user password
hpm.requestChunkSizeInBytes	Chunk size in bytes for HTTP file transfer to Product 360 - Server. Example value: 1048576 Default: 1048576
hpm.webClientUri	Base URL of the Product 360 - Web. Only used if permission.itemeditor is true. Example: http://hpmserver:1501/pim/webaccess
hpm.embedded.itemeditor	Global switch to enable/disable embedded item editor view. Options are TRUE and FALSE: - TRUE: item editor for supplier users appears embedded within Supplier Portal - FALSE: items editor for supplier users appears in a separate browser tab

HMM settings	
hmm.restUri	REST base URL to Product 360 - Media Manager. For host name and web server port see your Product 360 - Media Manager configuration. Example: http://hmmServer:8080/rest/rest
hmm.requestChunkSizeInBytes	Chunk size in bytes for HTTP file transfer to Product 360 - Media Manager. Example value: 1048576 Default: 1048576

Mail settings	
mail.enabled	Global switch to enable/disable mail functionality (boolean value). If true, the following parameters need to be used for mail server configuration. (It does not make much sense to use Product 360 - Supplier Portal without a mail server.) Default: false

mail.protocol	Mail protocol as passed to javax.mail. Example value: smtp Default: smtp
mail.serverHost	Mail server host. Example value: smtp.company.com
mail.serverPort	Mail server port. Example: 25 Default: 25
mail.senderAddressDefault	The default sender address for mails. Will be used and displayed as mail sender. Has to follow a valid email pattern. Example value: admin@company.com
mail.username	User name if the mail server demands authentication. Can be empty otherwise.
mail.password	User password for mail server authentication.
mail.templateFolderPath	Directory which contains mail templates that overwrite the default templates provided within the war file. You can also download the default templates using this link. Default: file:/// \${hsx.configurationArea}/mailTemplates/


Filestorage settings	
fileStorageService.rootDirectory	Folder pointing to the root directory for all binary files. Make sure that the folder exists and that there is enough space available. In production environments this directory should point to a fail-safe volume (e.g. RAID). Default: C:/Informatica/PIM/SupplierPortal/filestorage

FileShareAdapter settings	These settings are only needed if no Product 360 - Media Manager is available. Instead, a file based file share adapter can be configured that puts all uploaded media files in a single directory. If Product 360 - Media Manager is used, no values need to be configured.
----------------------------------	--

fileshare.adapter.home.dir	<p>Path to the Digital Asset Management System (DAM) home folder where the media assets from Product 360 - Supplier Portal shall be sent to. The user running the Tomcat server for Product 360 - Supplier Portal needs to have read/write access to that folder. Existing files will be overwritten. Examples:</p> <p>C:/Informatica/PIM/SupplierPortal/DAM //ServerName/ShareFolder</p> <p>Default: C:/Informatica/PIM/SupplierPortal/DAM</p>
fileshare.adapter.supplier.subfolder	<p>Create a supplier sub-folder. If true, a sub-folder for the specific supplier (if not already existing) will be created in the DAM home folder. The name of the folder is the supplier identifier. If false, the DAM home folder root is used.</p> <p>Default: true</p>
fileshare.adapter.catalog.subfolder	<p>Create a catalog sub-folder. If true, a sub-folder of the supplier folder (if not already existing) will be created. The name of the folder is the catalog identifier. If supplier sub-folder is false and catalog sub-folder is true, it will be implicitly assumed that supplier sub-folder is true.</p> <p>Default: true</p>
fileshare.adapter.unzip.images	<p>If true, the media archive will be unzipped before it is uploaded to the specific folder. Otherwise the zipped file is placed at the specific folder.</p> <p>Default: false</p>
fileshare.adapter.post.copy.step	<p>If defined, a batch script is called after the previous upload steps are completed. This property defines the batch script (including path) or is empty if no post copy step is needed. Examples:</p> <p>C:/Informatica/PIM/SupplierPortal/bin/MyBatchScript.bat //ServerName/ShareFolder/BIN/MyBatchScript.bat</p>


Media Asset settings (MAM)	These settings apply to both Product 360 - Supplier Portal and FileShareAdapter.
mam.mapping.available	<p>Allows to hide the special MAM mapping to upload images. If false, this mapping will not be shown, e.g. Product 360 - Supplier Portal can be used without any MAM system as back-end.</p> <p>Default: true</p>
mam.mapping.name	<p>The name of the MAM mapping. This is displayed to the supplier user in the first step of the upload process. As mappings from Product 360 - Server cannot be shown in more than one language, the name of the MAM mapping is unique too.</p> <p>Default: Media Assets</p>

mam.mapping.text	A longer description text for the MAM mapping. Default: Use this mapping to provide your media files.
mam.mapping.datasource.name	The name of the first and only mapping datasource. Default: Zipped media files
mam.mapping.datasource.text	A longer description text for the mapping datasource. Default: A zip archive containing all media assets.

Internationalization / UI language settings	
i18n.defaultUiLocale	Default locale of the system in JAVA syntax. This value is used as default for new users. Example value: en_US Default: en_US
i18n.availableUiLocales	 Property is not used in Product 360 7.0.04 List of all available locales in JAVA syntax, separated by comma. Example value: de_DE,en_US Default: de_DE,en_US
i18n.defaultDataLocale	The default language (locale) that is used for language specific data, f.e. catalog names. The format is ISO 3166-1 alpha-2. Default: en_US
i18n.availableDataLocales	The languages (locales) that are used for language specific data, f.e. all languages for which catalog names are maintained. The format is ISO 3166-1 alpha-2. Default: de_DE,en_US,fr_FR,ru_RU,nl_NL,sv_SE,fi_FI,es_ES,no_NO

Dataload job settings	
-----------------------	--

synchronizePendingImportRunJob.trigger.cronExpression	<p>Timer settings for the Product 360 - Server sync job following the cron expression pattern.</p> <p>This job polls Product 360 - Server for updates of running test runs / import runs.</p> <p>If such a run is finished, the Product 360 - Supplier Portal workflowmail continues.</p> <p>Example value to run every 10 seconds:</p> <p>0,10,20,30,40,50 * * * * ?</p> <p>Default:</p> <p># Run every 10 seconds</p> <p>0,10,20,30,40,50 * * * * ?</p>
synchronizePendingImportRunJob.lockAtMost (since 8.1.1)	<p>Defines how long (in ms) the job lock should be kept in case the machine which obtained the lock died before releasing it.</p> <p>This is just a fallback, under normal circumstances the lock is released as soon the tasks finishes.</p> <p>Negative value means default (1 hour)</p> <p>Default: 9000 (ms) = 9s</p>
removeOldImportFiles.trigger.cronExpression	<p>Timer settings for the old import files cleanup job following the cron expression pattern.</p> <p>This job removes product data and media data import files which overpass a specific amount of days.</p> <p>Example value to run every 10 seconds:</p> <p>0,10,20,30,40,50 * * * * ?</p> <p>Default:</p> <p># run every night at 01:00 a.m.</p> <p>0 0 1 * * ?</p>
removeOldImportFiles.lockAtMost (since 8.1.1)	<p>Defines how long (in ms) the job lock should be kept in case the machine which obtained the lock died before releasing it.</p> <p>This is just a fallback, under normal circumstances the lock is released as soon the tasks finishes.</p> <p>Negative value means default (1 hour)</p> <p>Default: 3600000 (ms) = 1h</p>
removeOldImportFiles.productFiles.olderThan	<p>Configuration of the import files cleanup job</p> <p>Remove all product data import files older than x days</p> <p>Default: 365</p>
removeOldImportFiles.mediaFiles.olderThan	<p>Configuration of the import files cleanup job</p> <p>Remove all media data import files older than x days</p> <p>Default: 365</p>

Url settings	
<p>hostAdressWithAppRoot</p>	<p>An URL pointing to the root of the web app. This URL is used in mails that contain a link to the application. Normally contains the absolute path including context path plus the suffix "/html/".</p> <p>If you are using <i>SAML authentication</i> and the property: <code>saml.supplierCreationStrategy</code> is set to <code>APPROVAL_WORKFLOW</code>, this url is also used in mails that contain a link to the application.</p> <p>Example value:</p> <p><code>http://hsxServer:9090/hsx/html/</code></p> <p>Default: <code>http://127.0.0.1:9090/hsx/html</code></p>
<p>resetPasswordRedirectTargetUrl</p> <p>(since 8.1.0.01)</p>	<p>Defines a destination URL to which a user gets redirected after resetting a password. It's an optional setting and in default its left EMPTY so that users get logged-in with the new password and redirected onto the Supplier Portal dashboard.</p> <p>In case of a customized "reset password" workflow this could be changed and the confirmation button after setting a new password redirects to a different URL. In this case the user is NOT logged in automatically and instead redirected to the configured URL.</p> <p>Example value:</p> <p><code>http://example:8080/landingPage.html</code></p> <p>Default: <code><empty></code></p>
<p>logoutUrl</p> <p>(since 8.1.0.02)</p>	<p>Defines a destination URL to which a user gets redirected after logout and timeout. It's an optional setting and in default its left EMPTY. By default the user gets redirected to the Supplier Portal login page.</p> <p>It is possible to enable the logout URL only for specific user roles. The logout redirect is only active if the current user matches at least one of the defined user roles of property <code>logoutUrlActiveRoles</code>.</p> <div> <p> If Supplier Portal runs with SAML active and user is also logged in via SAML authentication, this property is not used. The <code>logoutUrl</code> defined in the <code>SamlConfig.xml</code> is used for SAML logged in users.</p> </div> <p>Example value:</p> <p><code>http://www.informatica.com</code></p> <p>Default: <code><empty></code></p>
<p>logoutUrlActiveRoles</p> <p>(since 8.1.0.02)</p>	<p>Defines a list of user roles to enable the logout redirect defined in property <code>logoutUrl</code>. Property is only relevant if <code>logoutUrl</code> is defined and Supplier Portal runs without SAML.</p> <p>Example value:</p> <p><code>ROLE_SUPPLIER_USER,ROLE_SUPPLIER_ADMIN,ROLE_BROKER_USER,ROLE_PORTAL_ADMIN</code></p> <p>Default: <code>ROLE_SUPPLIER_USER,ROLE_SUPPLIER_ADMIN,ROLE_BROKER_USER</code></p>

File upload content filter settings	
content.filter.enabled	<p>Global switch to enable/disable content filtering of all uploaded files.</p> <p>If enabled, the parameter content.filter.accepted.mime.types provides a white list of all accepted file types.</p> <p>Default: true</p>
content.filter.accepted.mime.type	<p>List of accepted mime types for content filtering of uploaded files. All other files will be rejected during upload.</p> <p>A list of valid mime types can be found here: http://www.iana.org/assignments/media-types/media-types.xhtml</p> <p>Default:</p> <p>application/xml, text/csv, application/vnd.ms-excel, application/vnd.openxmlformats-officedocument.spreadsheetml.sheet, application/vnd.ms-excel.sheet.macroenabled.12, image/png, image/jpeg, image/gif, application/pdf, application/gzip, application/zip</p>

Image resizing settings	
image.resize	<p>The width uploaded user avatar images will be resized to.</p> <p>Default: 256</p>
image.resize.height	<p>The height uploaded user avatar images will be resized to.</p> <p>Default: 256</p>

Timeline / notification settings	
<p>Default values for mail notifications of new feed messages (can be individually changed per user in personal settings)</p> <p>Supplier:</p>	
feednotification.supplier.USER_REQUEST	Notify if new user message has been committed to the timeline that is visible for that supplier (boolean value).
feednotification.supplier.USER_REGISTRATION	Notify if a new user has registered for that supplier (boolean value).

feednotification.supplier.TEST_RUN_COMPLETE	Notify if a test run has been completed for that supplier (boolean value).
feednotification.supplier.IMPORT_RUN_COMPLETE	Notify if an import run has been completed for that supplier (boolean value).
Default values for mail notifications of new feed messages (can be individually changed per user in personal settings) Portal Administrator:	
feednotification.portal.USER_REQUEST	Notify if a new user message has been committed to the timeline (boolean value).
feednotification.portal.USER_REGISTRATION	Notify if a new user has registered to the portal (boolean value).
feednotification.portal.TEST_RUN_COMPLETE	Notify if a test run has been completed (boolean value).
feednotification.portal.IMPORT_RUN_COMPLETE	Notify if an import run has been completed (boolean value).
feedfilter.type	Default filter settings for all users. Use one or more of the FeedTypes comma separated (USER_REQUEST, USER_REGISTRATION, etc.) or leave it empty for all.

Timeline removal job settings	
remove.feeds.older.than	Configuration of the timeline cleanup job. Remove all feeds older than x days. Example value for 1 year: 356 Default: 365
removeOlderFeedsJob.trigger.cronExpression	Cron trigger when this job should run following the cron expression pattern. Example value for every night at 2 a.m.: 0 0 2 * * ? Default: # run every night at 02:00 a.m. 0 0 2 * * ?

removeOlderFeedsJob.lockAtMost (since 8.1.1)	<p>Defines how long (in ms) the job lock should be kept in case the machine which obtained the lock died before releasing it. This is just a fallback, under normal circumstances the lock is released as soon the tasks finishes. Negative value means default (1 hour)</p> <p>Default: 60000(ms) = 1min</p>
--	--

Workflow cleanup job settings	
workflowCleanupJob.maxAgeInWeeks	<p>Configuration of the workflow cleanup job. This job removes old workflow instances that have not been changed in the defined period of time. Remove workflows older than x weeks.</p> <p>Example value for 2 weeks: 2</p> <p>Default: 2</p>
workflowCleanupJob.trigger.cronExpression	<p>Cron trigger when this job should run following the cron expression pattern.</p> <p>Example value to run every night at 3 a.m.:</p> <p>0 0 3 * * ?</p> <p>Default:</p> <p># run every night at 03:00 a.m.</p> <p>0 0 2 * * ?</p>
workflowCleanupJob.lockAtMost (since 8.1.1)	<p>Defines how long (in ms) the job lock should be kept in case the machine which obtained the lock died before releasing it. This is just a fallback, under normal circumstances the lock is released as soon the tasks finishes. Negative value means default (1 hour)</p> <p>Default: 60000(ms) = 1min</p>
workflowCleanupJob.processDefinitionKeys	<p>The workflow names that should be considered when searching for unfinished running workflow instances. Normally the workflow name (sometimes called processDefinitionKey or processDefinitionId) can be found in the following line of the workflow bpmn xml:</p> <pre><process id="invitation" name="invitation"></pre> <p>If you add new workflows and want unfinished instances to be cleaned up, add the workflow name to this list.</p> <p>Default: invitation,importIntoHpm</p>

Permission settings	
----------------------------	--

global.permission.itemeditor	<p>Global switch to enable/disable item editor functionality. New suppliers (invited or registered) get this value as default. It can be changed in the UI for each supplier separately by the portal administrator.</p> <p>Please check for communication settings Supplier Portal => Product 360 Server</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • EDIT: items can be edited via item editor • READ: items can be viewed read only via item editor • RESTRICTED: items cannot be viewed and edited. Only portal admin can do any permission changes for a supplier. • DISABLED: items cannot be seen. An item editor does not exist at all. <p>Default: RESTRICTED</p>
global.permission.supliertasks	<p>Global switch to enable/disable the access to tasks assigned to Supplier Organization from Supplier Portal.</p> <p>Possible values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ENABLED: access to supplier tasks is enabled for the whole Supplier portal. • DISABLED: access to supplier tasks is disabled for the whole Supplier portal. <p>Default: DISABLED</p>
permissions.portalAdmin	<p>Defines a comma separated list of permissions which will be assigned to the portal admin role on startup. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • INVITE_SUPPLIER • VIEW_IMPORT_MANAGER • MANAGE_SUPPLIER_USER • MANAGE_SUPPLIER • START_DRY_RUN • MANAGE_BROKER_USER <p>Default:</p> <p>INVITE_SUPPLIER,VIEW_IMPORT_MANAGER,MANAGE_SUPPLIER_USER,MANAGE_SUPPLIER,START_DRY_RUN,MANAGE_BROKER_USER</p> <p>To get more detailed information on how to handle role permissions see the Customize User Interface.</p>
permissions.supplierAdmin	<p>Defines a comma separated list of permissions which will be assigned to the portal admin role on startup. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • START_DRY_RUN • MANAGE_SUPPLIER_USER <p>Default:</p> <p>START_DRY_RUN,MANAGE_SUPPLIER_USER</p> <p>To get more detailed information on how to handle role permissions see the Customize User Interface.</p>

permissions.broker	<p>Defines a list of permissions which will be assigned to the broker role on startup. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> START_DRY_RUN <p>Default: START_DRY_RUN</p>
urlToken.maxAge	<p>For url token authentication. Defines the time slot after that an issued token expires. Expired tokens cannot be used for authentication anymore. Value is in seconds.</p> <p>Default: 60</p>

License control settings	
license.maximumActiveUsers	<p>The number of total active supplier users allowed. If more users are created (e.g. during invitation or registration), a warning will be displayed in the UI and written in the log file.</p> <p>Default: 50</p>

Customization settings	
uiCustomization.file	<p>Defines the location ui customization file that allows to contribute new ui elements. An example and further details can be found in the Accelerators package under "Customize_User_Interface.html".</p> <p>Default: file:///\${hsx.configurationArea}/uiCustomization.json</p>
dataModelCustomization.file	<p>Defines the location of the custom fields file that allows to contribute additional data model fields. An example and further details can be found in the Accelerators package under "Customized_Data_Model_for_Supplier_Data.html".</p> <p>Default: file:///\${hsx.configurationArea}/dataModelCustomization.json</p>
registrationCustomization.defaultCatalogName	<p>Defines the name of the default catalog which is created while activating a supplier over Supplier Hub. The pattern {SupplierName} is going to be replaced by the supplier's name on runtime.</p> <p>Default: {SupplierName} - default Catalog</p>
workflows.customizationFolderPath	<p>Location of the folder containing customized workflows.</p> <p>Default: file:///\${hsx.configurationArea}/workflows/</p>

Other Security Related Settings	
keystore.location	Defines the file location of the keystore to use

keystore.password	Defines the password of the keystore defined via \${keystore.location} property
Load Balancer Settings for SAML setup	
loadbalancer.schema	Defines the file http transport protocol schema, either http or https
loadbalancer.contextPath	The supplier portal context path must be set and start with a forward slash Default: /hsx
loadbalancer.serverName	The load balancer server name
loadbalancer.port	The load balancer server port
saml.supplierCreationStrategy	Define the strategy how to create suppliers, if SAML authentication is used. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTOMATIC: Supplier and supplier users will be created automatically. • APPROVAL_WORKFLOW: Supplier and supplier users will be created with the registration workflow. Default value is AUTOMATIC

Misc Settings	
global.permission.ECCnetAccess (since 8.0.6.01)	Global switch to enable/disable the ECCnet access from Supplier Portal. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ENABLED: ECCnet access is enabled. Means that by default ECCnet access is enabled for newly created suppliers. However, the portal administrator can revoke ECCnet access from the supplier. • RESTRICTED: ECCnet access is available, but by default ECCnet access is disabled for newly created suppliers. However, the portal administrator can give ECCnet access to the supplier. • DISABLED: ECCnet access is disabled for the whole Supplier portal. Default: DISABLED
atmosphere.enabled	Can be used to turn push notifications off. Turn it off in case of issues in the network infrastructure, like proxies which are not deal with long running requests correctly. If set to false, users will not get notifications about new timeline messages unless refreshing the page explicitly or during navigation. Default value: true

atmosphere.defaultTransport	Default transport mode for server-side push notifications. Only applies, if atmosphere.enabled is true. Details: https://github.com/Atmosphere/atmosphere/wiki/atmosphere.js-API Possible values: long-polling, streaming, jsonp, sse, websocket Default value: streaming
atmosphere.fallbackTransport	Fallback transport mode for server-side push notifications. Only applies, if atmosphere.enabled is true. Fallback is used where there's an issue when establishing a connection to the server using the default mode. Details: https://github.com/Atmosphere/atmosphere/wiki/atmosphere.js-API Possible values: long-polling, streaming, jsonp, sse, websocket Default value: long-polling

Job Framework Settings (since 8.1.1)	
job.threadPoolSize	Set the Job Frameworks thread pool size. Default: 10
job.threadNamePrefix	Set the job frameworks thread name prefix. Default: JobThread
job.defaultLockAtMostFor	Scheduled (like import job synchronization,etc) jobs get locked to be sure to execute them only once at the same time. By setting defaultLockAtMostFor you make sure that the lock is released even if the node dies and make sure it's not executed more than once in the configured time duration (in minutes). Please note that if the job takes longer than the configured time duration, it will be executed again. Default: 15

8.2 Item Editor configuration

To use the Product 360 Web Item Editor functionality as Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Editor you need to setup special Product 360 Core users which handle the item editor scenario. Follow the next subsections to create these users and appropriate user groups which include the minimal set of action rights that are needed for the Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Editor use case.

There are 3 different kinds of **Product 360 Core Users** for different Product 360 - Supplier Portal use cases:

- **Product 360 Supplier Portal System User**
 - This system user is used to authenticate REST requests at Product 360 - Server which are triggered by suppliers (or Product 360 - Supplier Portal background jobs).
- **Product 360 Supplier Portal Administrator Users**
 - For all actions in Product 360 - Supplier Portal triggered by a portal administrator, the corresponding credentials of the named user are used at the REST interface.



In order to have an easily maintainable system, it is recommended to create a user group (with the minimal set of common rights) and to assign it to the **Product 360 Supplier Portal System User** and **Product 360 Supplier Portal Administrator Users**.

If object rights are used for an object, please keep in mind that all other users implicitly don't have any rights for it. Thus if an object like a supplier, catalog or mapping shall be used in Product 360 - Supplier Portal context (e.g. for the supplier list, to perform uploads, etc.) the corresponding user group for Product 360 - Supplier Portal **MUST** have full object rights on that object as well.

8.2.1 Create required Users and Groups within Product 360 - Desktop

Create Product 360 Supplier Portal Administrator Users Group

- The Product 360 Supplier Portal Users Group needs at least the following action rights:

Rights group	Permission	Note
Catalog	Supplier catalogs, general access	
General	Service Login	
Company Management	Company Management, general access	
Item	Items, general access	
Item	Create Item	
Item	Create Prices	
Item	Create Prices (in the past)	
Item	Delete items	
Item	Delete prices	
Item	Delete prices (in the past)	
Item	Edit items	
Item	Edit prices	
Item	Edit prices (in the past)	
Item	View prices	
Suppliers	Supplier Management, general access	
Suppliers	Edit suppliers	
Structures	Structures, general access	Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.

Rights group	Permission	Note
Structure groups	Structure groups, general access	Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Users	Users, general access	



All other Action rights not mentioned above, as well as all field rights have to be defined individually depending on the scenario and requirements of the project and the individual use case scenarios

Create Product 360 Supplier Portal System User

- Fill in the user details, keep attention to the following details:
 - the **Active** checkbox must be checked.
 - Authentication mode** has to be set to **"Internal"**
- Add User to the created **Product 360 Supplier Portal Administrators User Group**

Add Product 360 Core Users as Product 360 Supplier Portal Administrator

- Create a new Product 360 Core user or choose an existing Product 360 Core user to add to the Product 360 Supplier Portal Administrator User Group
- Fill in the user details, keep attention to the following details:
 - the **Active** check-box must be checked.
 - Add User to the created **Product 360 Supplier Portal Administrators User Group**.

8.2.2 Setup Product 360 - Web Users and Permissions for Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Editor/Viewer

The item management within Product 360 - Supplier Portal uses the Product 360 - Web functionality. There are two different use cases within Product 360 - Supplier Portal to take into account.

Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Editor:

which means, suppliers are able to edit items within the Product 360 - Supplier Portal.

Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Viewer:

which means, suppliers don't have the ability to edit item data within the Product 360 - Supplier Portal.



Both users need to be referenced by the webfrontend.properties file of the Product 360 server in order to be used by the system as default system users for Item Editor access through the Supplier Portal.

Create Product 360 - Supplier Portal Item Editor User Group

- If not already exists, create a new Product 360 Core User Group, which manages the Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Editor permission within Product 360 Core.
- The Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Editor Users Group need at least the following action rights:

Rights group	Permission	Note
Web Permissions	Log in (Product 360 - Web)	

Rights group	Permission	Note
Web Permissions	Classify objects (Product 360 - Web)	Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Web Permissions	Context visibility: Structures (Web Access)	Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Catalog	Supplier catalogs, general access	
Structures	Structures, general access	Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Structure groups	Structure groups, general access	Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Item	Items, general access	
Item search	Item search management, general access	
Product	Products, read object rights	needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Product	Product management, general access	needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Variant	Variants, read object rights	Only in 3 tier product paradigm. Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Variant	Variant management, general access	Only in 3 tier product paradigm. Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Tasks	Task management, general access	Needed since version 8.1.0.00 for viewing supplier tasks
Tasks	Edit tasks	Needed since version 8.1.0.00 for working on supplier tasks

3. at least the following action rights have to be **revoked**:

Rights group	Permission	Note
Web Permissions	Tab visibility: Item, References (Product 360 - Web)	
Web Permissions	Classify objects (Product 360 - Web)	Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree. So don't revoke while using version 7.1.02 and higher.
Web Permissions	Context visibility: Entire Context selection area (Product 360 - Web)	Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree. So don't revoke while using version 7.1.02 and higher.

Rights group	Permission	Note
Web Permissions	Help (Product 360 - Web)	
Web Permissions	Change Password	
Tasks	Create tasks	
Multimedia attachments	Add multimedia attachments	
Import	revoke all permissions	Especially revoking 'Perform import' is important. Otherwise the Supplier Portal upload process would be compromised.
Merge	Merge, general access	Needed since version 8.1, since it allows to perform a catalog merge from within the Web UI now.
Merge	Perform Merge	Needed since version 8.1, since it allows to perform a catalog merge from within the Web UI now.
Flexible UI	Access Flexible UI	Needed since version 8.1 which introduces the new permission to avoid access to tasks of other suppliers and to objects from catalogs of other suppliers and master catalog using Flexible UI.

Since Product 360 8.1 it is possible to allow the assignment of Supplier Organizations to tasks setup in the system. The Supplier Organizations that are configured to work with tasks can access them similarly as their general catalog data by the item editor integration. For this setup at least the following field right setup should be considered:

Data range	Permission	Note
Tasks	Revoke all field rights except the following: Start date Estimated start date Anticipated completion on Progress Completed on	These adjustments are needed since version 8.1 which enables the assignment of Supplier Organizations to tasks. Revoking the field rights will guarantee that a supplier user cannot change the general definitions of a task setup by you.



All other Action rights not mentioned above, as well as all field rights have to be defined individually depending on the scenario and requirements of the project and the individual use case scenarios

Create Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Viewer User Group

1. If not already exists, create a new Product 360 Core User Group, which manages the Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Viewer permission within Product 360 Core.
2. The Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Viewer Users Group need at least the following action rights:

Rights group	Permission	Note
Web Permissions	Log in (Product 360 - Web)	
Catalog	Supplier catalogs, general access	
Structures	Structures, general access	Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Structure groups	Structure groups, general access	Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Item	Items, general access	
Item search	Item search management, general access	
Product	Products, read object rights	needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.
Variant	Variants, read object rights	Only in 3 tier product paradigm. Needed since version 7.1.02, while supplier is able to classify in structure tree.

3. at least the following action rights have to be **revoked**:

Rights group	Permission	Note
Web Permissions	Tab visibility: Item, References (Product 360 - Web)	
Web Permissions	Classify objects (Product 360 - Web)	
Web Permissions	Context visiblty: Entire Context selection area (Product 360 - Web)	
Web Permissions	Help (Product 360 - Web)	
Web Permissions	Change Password	
Tasks	Create tasks	
Multimedia attachments	Add multimedia attachments	

Rights group	Permission	Note
Item	revoke all permission to edit, insert, delete or change items	
(Variants) only for 3 tier product paradigm installations	revoke all permission to edit, insert, delete or change variants	
Products	revoke all permission to edit, insert, delete or change products	
Import	revoke all permissions	Especially revoking 'Perform import' is important. Otherwise the Supplier Portal upload process would be compromised.



All other Action rights not mentioned above, as well as all field rights have to be defined individually depending on the scenario and requirements of the project and the individual use case scenarios

Create Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Editor System User

1. Fill in the user details, keep attention to the following details:

- the **Active** checkbox must be checked.
- **Authentication mode** has to be set to "**Internal**"

- Add User to the created **Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Editor User Group**.

Create Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Viewer System User

1. Fill in the user details, keep attention to the following details:

- the **Active** checkbox must be checked.
- **Authentication mode** has to be set to "**Internal**"

- Add User to the created **Product 360 Supplier Portal Item Viewer User Group**

8.3 Setup Post Export Step

The Product 360 Supplier Portal Post Export Step introduces the possibility for Product 360 Core users to send selected catalog data to a specific supplier within Product 360 Supplier Portal. For more information about the Product 360 Supplier Portal Post Export Step see this page.

To configure the communication from Product 360 - Server to Product 360 Supplier Portal just make sure you set the following properties in the

<P360_SERVER_INSTALLATION_ROOT>\server\configuration\HPM\hsx.properties

Database Settings	
hsx.enabled	Enable the Product 360 - Server-> Product 360 - Supplier Portal communication hsx.enabled=true
hsx.server	The Product 360 - Supplier Portal tomcat application server host name. e.g. hsx.server=localhost
hsx.port	Port of the Product 360 - Supplier Portal application. e.g. hsx.port=9090
hsx.login.name	e.g. hsx.login.name=hsx
hsx.login.password	Password of the above portal administrator. e.g. hsx.login.password=pass
hsx.rest.uri	e.g. hsx.rest.uri=http://localhost:9090/hsx/rest/

8.4 Network setup

8.4.1 Setup HTTPS/SSL Security

When configuring Product 360 Supplier Portal for production usage, setting up https security is **mandatory**. Otherwise all user credentials will be send as plain text through the internet. There are two scenarios, how security can be ensured:

- Setup a Reverse Proxy that transparently forwards all requests to the Supplier Portal server. SSL certificates are installed on the Reverse Proxy.
- Install SSL certificates directly on Supplier Portal Server.

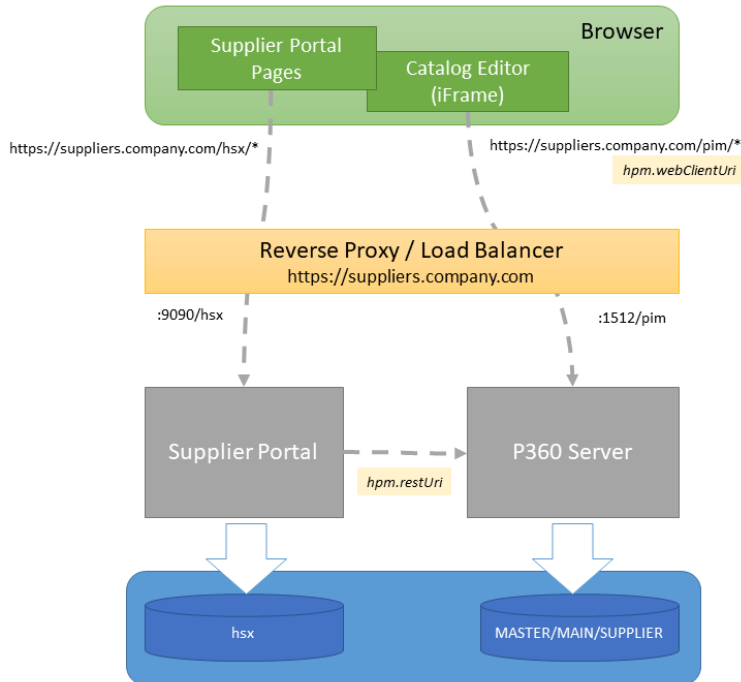
A combination of both is possible, too.



When using a proxy don't forget to configure the externally visible URLs in the [configuration file](#). This URL is used in emails that are sent by the application.

8.4.2 Setup a Reverse Proxy

A proxy may optionally be used to handle incoming requests from outside and redirect them into the internal network. Please note, that the Product 360 server needs to be configured at the same proxy to enable the catalog editor functionality (suppliers that can view/edit their catalog data directly). The catalog editor is a stripped down Product 360 web interface that is loaded within an iFrame at the supplier users Browser. The property *hpm.webClientUri* needs to be adjusted to point to the externally visible Product 360 Web UI endpoint.



Product 360 - Supplier Portal has been tested together with Apache HTTP 2.2. The Apache can be used as:

- Reverse proxy that transparently handles incoming requests and redirects them into the internal network
- Load balancer to distribute requests to multiple Product 360 - Supplier Portal installations
- Storage for SSL certificates

Configuring a reverse proxy is as simple as open the `httpd.conf` of the Apache installation and add the following lines:

```
# Load the needed mod_proxy modules
LoadModule proxy_module modules/mod_proxy.so
LoadModule proxy_connect_module modules/mod_proxy_connect.so
LoadModule proxy_http_module modules/mod_proxy_http.so

#Reverse Proxy Supplier Portal
ProxyPass /hsx http://<balancerhost>:<port>/hsx
ProxyPassReverse /hsx http://<balancerhost>:<balancerport>/hsx
```

8.4.3 Configure Support for X-Forward-* headers

When acting as a reverse proxy, Apache http and IIS automatically rewrite both incoming and outgoing urls. However, some Load Balancers like Amazon ELB cannot rewrite all outgoing urls (see <https://aws.amazon.com/de/premiumsupport/knowledge-center/redirect-http-https-elb/>). The latter is needed for redirecting the user to the main page after successful login (app server sends a 302 redirect to Browser). In this case, the url is returned as Location header in the http response. If the app server is accessed with http only and the proxy uses https the Browser will not redirect to a http address for security reasons.

In case the proxy sets X-Forward-* headers in the requests to the app-server (like Amazon ELB), Apache Tomcat needs to be configured to process these headers. This can be done by extending the `server.xml` configuration file and adding the **RemoteIpValve**. Example:

```
<Valve className="org.apache.catalina.valves.RemoteIpValve"
    internalProxies="192\.168\.1\.\d{1,3}"
    remoteIpHeader="x-forwarded-for"
    remoteIpProxiesHeader="x-forwarded-by"
    protocolHeader="x-forwarded-proto"
/>
```

Note: internalProxies is the IP address of the Load Balancer as seen by the Tomcat. The value should be in the form of a regular expression (in the syntax supported by `java.util.regex`)

More information: <http://stackoverflow.com/questions/5741210/handling-x-forwarded-proto-in-java-apache-tomcat> and <https://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-9.0-doc/api/org/apache/catalina/valves/RemoteIpValve.html> .

8.4.4 Install SSL certificates on Supplier Portal Server directly

It is possible to setup SSL security on the Supplier Portal server, too. This is useful, if the connection between the Reverse Proxy and the Supplier Portal should be encrypted and secured, too. However, when using a Load Balancer, SSL certificates need to be installed and maintained on all machines.

To enable https, open the file `<HSX_Install>\tomcat\conf\server.xml`. Please find or extend a block similar to this one:

```
<Connector port="9443" protocol="org.apache.coyote.http11.Http11NioProtocol" SSLEnabled="true"
    maxThreads="150" scheme="https" secure="true"
    clientAuth="false" sslProtocol="TLS" URIEncoding="UTF-8"
    keystoreFile="C:/Users/sroeck/.keystore" keystorePass="password"
/>
```

The specified port is the one that needs to be configured within the Reverse Proxy/Load Balancer. KeystoreFile is pointing to the location of the SSL certificate.

Please refer to the Tomcat documentation for more information about available options.

8.4.5 Setup Secure Connection between Supplier Portal and Product 360 Server

Customers sometimes require to not only encrypt http traffic between Browser and Application Server but also all internal http messages, e.g. between Supplier Portal and Product 360 Server. To implement this:

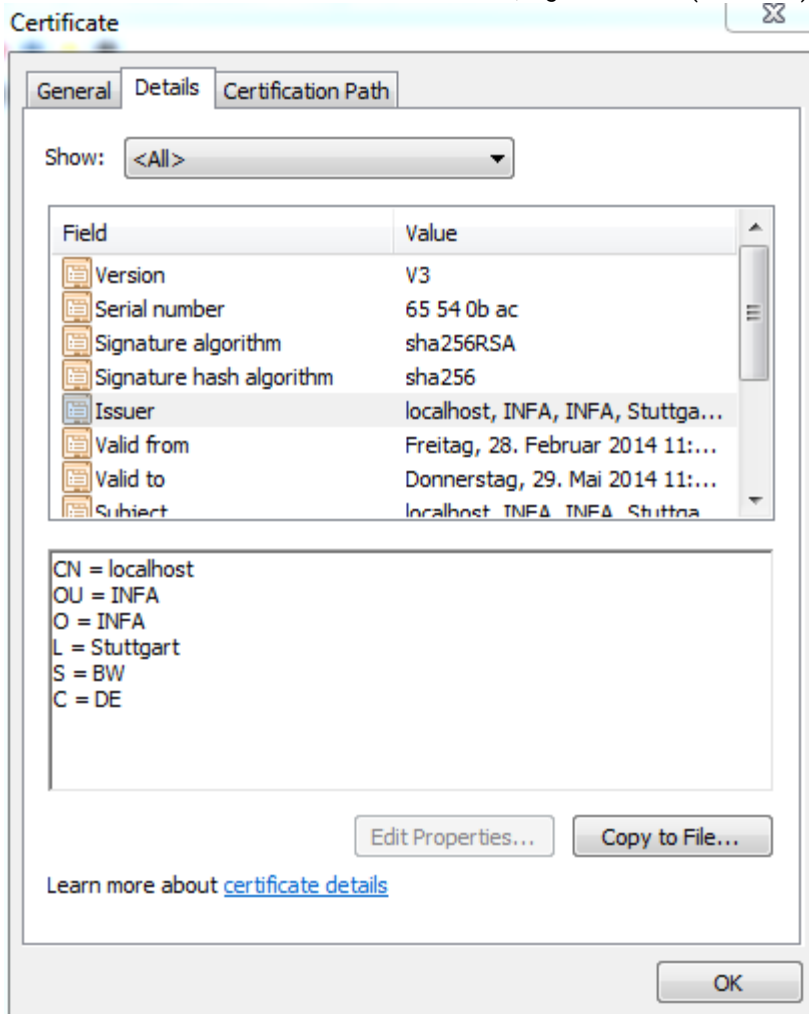
1. Configure https on the Product 360 Server as described [here](#)
2. Specify the configured https url within Supplier Portal, e.g.

```
hpm.restUri=https://localhost:8443/rest
```

Some notes on testing with self-created SSL certificates:

- SSL handshake checks the server's identity. If the identity cannot be matched, you'll receive the following exception: `java.security.cert.CertificateException: No name matching`. To fix this, make sure the certificate's CN

matches the host name of the destination server, e.g. "localhost" (more info).



- Self-Created certificates are not trusted by default. To make your local keystore trusted, start Supplier Portal with the following JVM arguments (more info):

```
-Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore=C:/Users/sroeck/.keystore // path to keystore  
-Djavax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword=password // keystore password
```

8.5 Multiserver Setup

Supplier Portal may be setup as a multiserver system including load balancing. There are some things to consider concerning configuration of the servers and the loadbalancers.

8.5.1 Property configuration



It has to be ensured that all quartz job triggers are configured as such that only one server executes them.

So in this case high availability cannot be guaranteed, because it's a requirement to only have one background job for import job synchronization running, to not corrupt the job status within the supplier portal.

This does not mean that any import data will get lost on a down time of the supplier portal server running the synchronization job, it only means that the displayed import status within the supplier portal import views going to stuck for the time this server is down.

There are several properties that define a trigger pattern (see property descriptions above). Define the patterns except for the dedicated quartz job server like in the following example so that the triggers never fire:

```
synchronizePendingImportRunJob.trigger.cronExpression=* * * * ? 2099
```

Also for all properties that define access to files make sure that the same folder is used across all servers. This is generally done by using shared folders and UNC path as in this example:

```
fileStorageService.rootDirectory=//ServerName/ShareFolder
```

If there is a load balancer setup for several Product 360 servers, the url for the service api requests and the web client have to be set to the loadbalancer as well:

```
hpm.restUri=http://pimLoadbalancer/rest  
hpm.webClientUri=http://pimLoadbalancer/pim/webaccess
```

8.5.2 Setup Reverse Proxy and Load Balancer

When using Apache HTTP 2.2 as reverse proxy and load balancer for multiserver scenarios, the httpd.conf file must be additionally modified for load balancing purposes:

```
# Load the needed mod_proxy modules  
LoadModule proxy_module modules/mod_proxy.so  
LoadModule proxy_connect_module modules/mod_proxy_connect.so  
LoadModule proxy_http_module modules/mod_proxy_http.so  
  
<IfModule log_config_module>  
...  
LogFormat "%h %l %u %t %s" "%{ms}T \"%r\" \"%s\" %b \"%{JSESSIONID}e\"" combined  
...  
</IfModule>  
  
#Reverse Proxy Supplier Portal  
ProxyPass /hsx http://<balancerhost>:<port>/hsx stickysession=JSESSIONID|jsessionid  
ProxyPassReverse /hsx http://<balancerhost>:<balancerport>/hsx stickysession=JSESSIONID|jsessionid  
#Use sticky sessions, identify servers via route parameter  
<Proxy balancer://<balancerhost>>  
    BalancerMember http://<supplierserver1>:<server1port> route=server1 stickysession=JSESSIONID|jsessionid  
    BalancerMember http://<supplierserver2>:<server2port> route=server2 stickysession=JSESSIONID|jsessionid  
    ProxySet stickysession=JSESSIONID|jsessionid  
</Proxy>
```


The route parameter also requires to setup the tomcat servers accordingly. That means using the same route id in the engine parameter in the server.xml of the respective Tomcat configuration.
This would be an example configuration for the server <supplierserver1>:

```
<Engine name="Catalina" defaultHost="localhost" jvmRoute="server1">
```

For further information consider the Apache web server documentation.

```
<Valve className="org.apache.catalina.valves.RemoteIpValve" internalProxies="192.168.1.XXX"
remoteIpHeader="x-forwarded-for" remoteIpProxiesHeader="x-forwarded-by" protocolHeader="x-
forwarded-proto" />
```

8.6 SAML Configuration

This guide describes the necessary steps to configure Product 360 Supplier Portal for usage with SAML Single Sign On.

8.6.1 Overview

SAML Roles

The SAML specification defines three roles:

- the Principal (typically a user)
- the Identity Provider (IdP) e.g. Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS), OKTA or Shibboleth
- and the Service Provider (SP), in our case the Product 360 Supplier Portal

This section describes all steps necessary to setup Single Sign On (in short SSO) via SAML for the Product 360 Supplier Portal.

If you want to know more about what SAML is, documentation can be found on the official SAML documentation pages provided by the OASIS consortium.

In general, the term "Service Provider" can be replaced with "Product 360 Supplier Portal" and the term "User agent" can be replaced with "Browser" in case of web based SSO scenarios.

Single Sign On flow

Product 360 Supplier Portal supports two general ways for Single Sign On: Service Provider initiated and Identity Provider initiated Single Sign On.

In addition to that, Supplier Portal also supports Single Sign On for all user roles: Supplier users or Broker users maintained only in Supplier Portal and Portal administrators that are maintained in the Product 360 Server.

Single Sign On Initiation

Service Provider initiated

In this scenario

1. the principal requests a service from the service provider (e.g. access to a web resource within the Product 360 Supplier Portal).
2. Before providing this resource to the principal the service provider redirects user authentication (AuthRequest) to the identity provider.
3. In case the user is not yet authenticated at the Identity Provider, the IdP requests credentials from the user, e.g. by presenting a login form for the username and password.
4. Once the authentication has been finished, the IdP provides an identity assertion (SAML assertion) for the principal.
5. On basis of this assertion, the service provider can make a decision to provide the resource to the principal or not, i.e. checking authorization of the principal for the resource.
6. If the authorization check passes, the SP then provides the initially requested resource.

Identity Provider initiated

In this scenario, there is no initial authentication request from the SP. Instead, the IdP provides links to certain SP resources. IdP initiated Single Sign On is started when the user clicks on such a link.

1. The user has already accessed the IdP's web user interface and is authenticated.
2. In that interface the user clicks on a link to access a resource of the SP.
3. The SP directly receives an identity assertion for the principal and information about the requested resource.
4. On basis of this assertion, the service provider can make a decision to provide the resource to the principal or not, i.e. checking authorization of the principal for the resource.
5. If the authorization check passes, the SP then provides the initially requested resource.

Role specific process

In Product 360 Supplier Portal it is possible to activate Single Sign On only for Supplier/Broker users or only for Portal administrators or for all roles. This may require specific configuration preparations for user or supplier creation. For details about this see section 'Automatic user and supplier creation on successful authentication' below.

System architecture



Gliffy Macro Error

You do not have permission to view this diagram.

Product 360 Supplier Portal acts as two relying parties (service providers): A Supplier User SSO relying party (for Supplier/Broker users) and a Portal Administrator SSO relying party (respectively service provider and entityID).

In the case of Portal Administrator SSO also Product 360 Server acts as a relying party resp. service provider (for more information on SAML configuration for Product 360 Server see chapter "Server Configuration" of the Installation and Configuration guide and there "[SAML Configuration](#)"). In this scenario the authenticated portal administrator not only has to be logged into the Product 360 Supplier Portal, but also into the Product 360 Server, in order to be able to authenticate when executing REST calls (e.g. for syncing catalog/supplier information from Product 360 Server). Therefore Product 360 Supplier Portal sends the SAML Response (initially created by the IdP for Portal Administrator SSO) to the Product 360 Server and receives an access token for authentication against Product 360 Server in further REST calls.



For Portal Administrator SSO it is mandatory, that the relying party for Product 360 Supplier Portal Portal Administrator SSO and the relying party for Product 360 Server are configured on the same IdP. Also the same certificates and keys have to be used for these two relying parties, so that Product 360 Server is also able to validate the SAML Response, which was initially created for the relying party of Product 360 Supplier Portal Portal Administrator SSO.

This also means that Saml must be set to active and keystore properly defined on the Product360 Server.

The relying party for Supplier Portal Supplier User SSO can either be configured on the same IdP as the relying party for Supplier Portal Portal Administrator SSO, or on a different IdP.

Product 360 Supplier Portal has two different login and consumer urls, one for Supplier User SSO and one for Portal Administrator SSO. Also the SAML configuration for these two cases are located in different XML files (`SamlConfig.xml` and `SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml`).

Security in Product 360 Supplier Portal SAML support

- HTTP communication security is ensured by using SSL for the communication between the IdP and SP (Tomcat https support)
- Messages can be signed and encrypted to ensure message-level security. This includes:
 - signing of AuthRequest message by the SP

- signing of SAML Assertions by the IdP
- encryption of SAML Assertions by the IdP
- When the IdP is signing the assertion, the Product 360 Supplier Portal can verify that it was issued by exactly this IdP using the IdP's public X509 certificate.
- Optionally supplying Product 360 Supplier Portal with a public X509 certificate and private key allows Product 360 Supplier Portal, as the SP, to sign outgoing AuthRequests to the IdP, as well as decrypt assertions from the IdP.
- Product 360 Supplier Portal signs outgoing messages to the IdP with the SHA1 hashing algorithm. Product 360 Supplier Portal supports incoming messages from the IdP signed with the SHA1 or SHA256 hashing algorithms.
- Product 360 Supplier Portal can decrypt assertions from IdP, encrypted with AES-128, AES-256, or Triple DES encryption algorithms.
- Passwords are never transmitted as part of a SAML authentication request or response. Responses only contain the username and (optionally) any additional metadata (username, domain, email, etc.) that was configured by the IdP administrator. The optional information can be used for automatic user creation.

8.6.2 Preparation steps

Certificate keystores

i For AD FS, it is necessary to have HTTPS enabled. Therefore you need a keystore file, which has to be provided for each node.

Product 360 Supplier Portal currently operates only on JKS format keystores. The JKS format is Java's standard "Java KeyStore" format, and is the format created by the `keytool` command-line utility. This tool is included in the JDK.

Each entry in a keystore is identified by an alias string. In order to avoid issues related to the case sensitivity of aliases, it is not recommended to use aliases that only differ in the use of small and capital letters.

To setup SAML support in Product 360 Supplier Portal we will need to start with creating the keystores for the different X509 certificates which will be needed for transport and message level security. If there is no SSL connection used within your Product 360 Supplier Portal yet, you will need to setup an initial keystore.

Create new certificate and keystore

To create a new JKS keystore from scratch, containing a single self-signed Certificate, execute the following command from a terminal command line:

Create new certificate and keystore

```
keytool -genkey -alias [your alias] -keyalg RSA -keystore c:\path\to\your\desired\.keystore -keysize 2048
```

This command will create a new file under the specified (`-keystore` parameter) location. You will also need to reflect this new location in the Product 360 tomcat server.xml file in the `<Connector>` element.

After executing this command, you will be prompted for the keystore password. You will also need to specify the keystore password in the `server.xml` file in the `<Connector>` element, as described in the Setup HTTPS/SSL.

Sample HTTPS Connector Definition in server.xml

```
<Connector port="9443"
  protocol="org.apache.coyote.http11.Http11NioProtocol"
  maxThreads="150" SSLEnabled="true" scheme="https" secure="true"
  clientAuth="false" sslProtocol="TLS" URIEncoding="UTF-8"
```

```
keyAlias="tomcat"
keypass="secret"
keystoreFile="C:\PIM\SP\configuration\keystore"
keystorePass="heiler"

/>
```

Next, you will be prompted for general information about this certificate, such as company, contact name, and so on. This information will be displayed to users who attempt to access a secure page in your application, so make sure that the information provided here matches with what they will expect.

Finally, you will be prompted for the *key password*, which is the specific password for this certificate (as opposed to any other certificates stored in the same keystore file). You need to specify the key password as well as the specified alias (`-alias` parameter) in the appropriate use case (HTTPS, SAML signing, SAML encryption) and their configuration files (e.g. `server.xml`, see above).

If everything was successful, you now have a keystore file with a certificate that can be used by your Product 360 Supplier Portal.

Import existing certificate into keystore

If you already have a CA certificate (=certificate obtained by a Certificate Authority), you can import it into your local keystore. First of all you have to import a so called Chain Certificate or Root Certificate into your keystore. After that you can proceed with importing your CA certificate.

Download a Chain Certificate from the Certificate Authority you obtained the certificate from.

- For Verisign.com commercial certificates go to: <http://www.verisign.com/support/install/intermediate.html>
- For Verisign.com trial certificates go to: http://www.verisign.com/support/verisign-intermediate-ca/Trial_Secure_Server_Root/index.html
- For Trustcenter.de go to: <http://www.trustcenter.de/certservices/cacerts/en/en.htm#server>
- For Thawte.com go to: <http://www.thawte.com/certs/trustmap.html>

Import the Chain Certificate into your keystore:

Import the Chain Certificate into your keystore

```
keytool -import -alias root -keystore c:\path\to\your\desired\keystore -trustcacerts -file c:\path\to\your\trustcacertFileName
```

Finally you can import the CA certificate:

Import the CA certificate

```
keytool -import -alias https -keystore c:\path\to\your\desired\keystore -file c:\path\to\your\certificateFileName
```

Export existing certificate's public keys for metadata usage

For the SAML metadatas you will need the public keys in a readable format. In order to get them execute the following commands from command line:

Export existing certificates

```
keytool -export -file c:\mycertificate.cert -alias samlEncryptionCert -keystore c:\path\to\your\desired\keystore
```

Convert certificate to readable format

```
keytool -printcert -rfc -file c:\mycertificate.cert > c:\mycertificate.txt
```

Import of Single Sign On relevant keystore entries from Product 360 Server



When activating Single Sign on for Portal administrators, please keep in mind that Product 360 Supplier Portal also authenticates against the same IdP which is used for Single Sign On. Since Product 360 Supplier Portal does not have access to the keystore of Product 360 Server it is required to reuse those keystore entries from Product 360 Server in the keystore used for Product 360 Supplier Portal.

IdP Configuration

The concrete configuration steps for the IdP highly depend on the IdP implementation (like AD FS, OpenAM or Shibboleth). But in general the following points have to be considered here:

- Create relying party(s) representing Product 360 Supplier Portal. For Supplier User SSO and Portal administrator SSO separate relying parties are needed.
- Define unique entityID(s), for Supplier User SSO and Portal administrator SSO, which you then use in the Product 360 Supplier Portal Configuration files (see chapter "Add SAML relevant configuration files")
- The assertion consumer server location in the IdP corresponds to the `assertionConsumerServiceLocation` defined in `SamlConfig.xml` resp. `SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml` **plus** `/<applicationRoot>/saml/supplierSSO` (for Supplier user SSO) resp. `/<applicationRoot>/saml/supplierSSO/alias/portalAdmin` (for Portal Administrator SSO),
 - e.g. for Supplier User SSO: `https://pim.informatica.com/hsx/saml/supplierSSO`
 - e.g. for Portal administrator SSO: `https://pim.informatica.com/hsx/saml/supplierSSO/alias/portalAdmin`
 - please keep in mind that the `assertionConsumerServiceLocation` in both config files `SamlConfig.xml` resp. `SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml` is still only the base app url, e.g. `https://pim.informatica.com/hsx`.
- Use or create public certificates and private keys appropriate to them used in the Product 360 Supplier Portal keystore.



For Portal Administrator SSO it is mandatory to use the same certificates for the Portal Administrator relying party of Product 360 Supplier Portal as used for the relying party of Product 360 Server (see chapter "Server Configuration" of the Installation and Configuration guide and there "[SAML Configuration](#)").



If you use Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS), you might have to explicitly enable the usage of one certificate for multiple relying parties. Here you can find more information about this: <https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/help/2877424/update-enables-you-to-use-one-certificate-for-multiple-relying-party-trusts-in-an-ad-fs-2.1-farm>

- If possible, use the URL-provided SP metadata of Product 360 Supplier Portal, in order to retrieve SAML metadata information of Product 360 Supplier Portal (configuration, certificates etc...):
 - e.g. for Supplier User SSO: `https://pim.informatica.com/hsx/saml/metadata`
 - e.g. for Portal administrator SSO: `https://pim.informatica.com/hsx/saml/metadata/alias/portalAdmin`
 - As an alternative you can generate your metadata file with the following online tool: https://www.samltool.com/sp_metadata.php

- Ensure that SAML assertions contain the mandatory SAML attributes defined in the chapter "SAML attributes". Optionally map also the not-mandatory SAML attributes.

8.6.3 Configuring SAML for Product 360 Supplier Portal

Activate SAML

Activate SAML for Product 360 Supplier Portal by adding the `samlSSO` spring profile to the JVM arguments list.

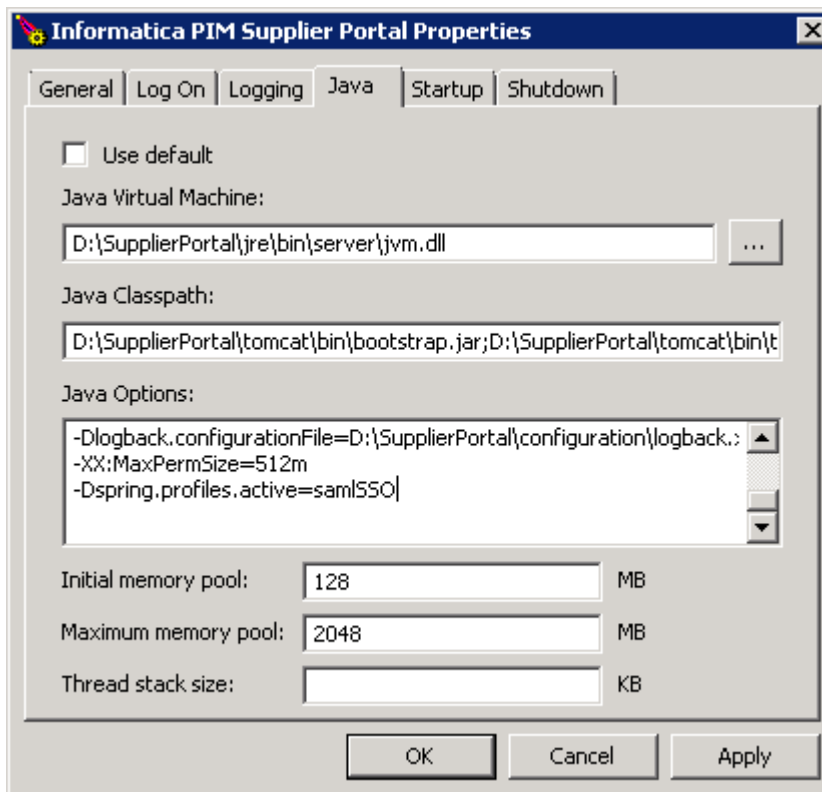
Windows

1. Call the configure script:

```
<SUPPLIER PORTAL INSTALLATION ROOT>/configure.bat
```

2. Add `samlSSO` spring profile to the `spring.profiles.active` argument:

```
-Dspring.profiles.active=samlSSO
```



Linux

1. Edit your `tomcat.sh` shell script:

```
<SUPPLIER PORTAL INSTALLATION ROOT>/tomcat/bin/tomcat.sh
```

2. Add the `spring.profiles.active` argument with the `samlSSO` profile included (see line 11 below as an example):

```

....
export CATALINA_OPTS="-Dcatalina.home=$CATALINA_HOME
-Dcatalina.base=$CATALINA_HOME
-Djava.endorsed.dirs=$CATALINA_HOME/endorsed
-Djava.io.tmpdir=$CATALINA_HOME/temp
-Djava.util.logging.manager=org.apache.juli.ClassLoaderLogManager
-Djava.util.logging.config.file=$CATALINA_HOME/conf/logging.properties
-Dhsx.configurationArea=$HSX_CONFIG_AREA
-Dlogback.configurationFile=$HSX_CONFIG_AREA/logback.xml

-Dspring.profiles.active=samlSSO

-XX:MaxPermSize=512m"
....

```

Configure keystore settings in configuration.properties

Edit your configuration.properties to conform to your created [Keystore Settings](#):

```

#####
### Keystore settings

# Defines the file location of the keystore to use
keystore.location = file:c:/temp/.keystore
# Defines the password of the keystore defined via ${keystore.location} property
keystore.password = heiler

```

Add SAML relevant configuration files



The current SAML implementation requires the IdP to deliver the username (without domain or email extension) in the **NameID** attribute.

After having https enabled and a keystore configured, the `SamlConfig.xml` resp. the `SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml` have to be configured.

Both xml files have the same schema, but their values differ to reflect the different SSO scenarios for the different user roles.

- If Single Sign On for Supplier users is desired, configuring the `SamlConfig.xml` in Supplier Portal file is mandatory.
- If Single Sign On for Portal administrators is desired, configuring the `SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml` file in Supplier Portal is mandatory. Here it is also mandatory to activate SSO in Product 360 Server and adjust the `SamlConfig.xml` file in Product 360 Server. See chapter "Server Configuration" of the Installation and Configuration guide and there "[SAML Configuration](#)".

SamlConfig.xml and SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml

Create a new `SamlConfig.xml` respectively `SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml` file in your configuration folder. Adapt it to fit to your needs, add the alias and password of your key and enable SAML.

If you want to use different keys for signing and encryption, you have to create multiple keys in the keystore. The following example assumes the use of the same keys for signing and encryption.

Sample SamlConfig.xml

```
<samlConfig xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="SamlConfig.xsd">
  <logoutUrl>https://idpserver/login.html</logoutUrl>
  <active>true</active>
  <idpMetadata>
    <metadataLocation forceAuthRequestsSigned="false" disregardSslCertificate="false">idp-metadata.xml</metadataLocation>
  </idpMetadata>
  <spMetadata>
    <assertionConsumerServiceLocation>https://supplierPortal.informatica.com</assertionConsumerServiceLocation>
    <signingKey password="secret" alias="localhost"/>
    <encryptionKey password="secret" alias="localhost"/>
    <entityId>spEntityID</entityId>
    <wantAssertionsSigned>true</wantAssertionsSigned>
  </spMetadata>
</samlConfig>
```

Active

Defines whether SAML shall be used to initiate automated SAML Single Sign On if the user is not logged in yet.

Type	Required	Default
Boolean	yes	false

LogoutUrl

Defines the URL which the user will be redirected to after logout. Most typically this is an URL where a user may login to the application IdP initiated.

In case the element does not exist or the value is empty, the user is redirected to the default Product 360 Supplier Portal login page.

Type	Required	Default
String or URL	no	Product 360 Supplier Portal login page

DefaultUserGroup

This element is only meaningful for portal admin user SSO.




When a portal admin user has been authenticated via SAML and there is no matching user with the same name in Product 360 Server the user will be created on the fly. In this case it is mandatory to provide a default user group here, which the newly created portal admin user will be assigned to in Product 360 Server. A matching user group with this name has to exist in Product 360 Server.


A guideline which user rights requirements the user group for Portal Admin Users has to fulfill can be found in the chapter "Item Editor Configuration" in the general documentation "Supplier Portal Configuration".

Type	Required	Default
String	not required as per schema definition, but required in SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml, in case Portal administrator SSO is active	-

SpMetadata


Required element defining all Service Provider relevant settings.

Sub element/Attribute	Type	Required	Default	Description
entityId	String	yes	-	<p>An entity ID is a globally unique name for a SAML entity, in this case a Service Provider (SP), in concrete the Supplier Portal. The entityId defined will be used for communication between IdP and SP.</p> <div> In case the SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml is configured for Portal administrator SSO, then the entityId must differ from the entityId in the SamlConfig.xml of Product 360 Server and also from the entityId in the SamlConfig.xml of Product 360 Supplier Portal.</div>
assertionConsumersServiceLocation	URL	yes	-	<p>Describes the endpoint to which SAML responses are sent by the IdP.</p> <div> Add only your Supplier Portal URL for example: https://localhost:9443/hsx . SAML relevant url path extensions are added by internal framework.</div>
signingKey	-	yes	-	<p>The signing key is used to establish a trusted handshake between SP and IdP (authentication).</p> <div> In case the SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml is configured for Portal administrator SSO, the same signing key as defined in the SamlConfig.xml in Product 360 Server must be used.</div>
alias	String	yes	-	Alias for the key used for signing.
password	String	yes	-	Password for accessing the key defined by the alias.

encryptionKey	String	yes	-	<p>The encryption key is used to decrypt data received by IdP (data was encrypted by the SPs corresponding public key).</p> <div>  In case the SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml is configured for Portal administrator SSO, the same encryption key as defined in the SamlConfig.xml in Product 360 Server must be used. </div>
alias	String	yes	-	Alias for the key used for signing.
password	String	yes	-	Password for accessing the key defined by the alias.
wantAssertionsSigned	Boolean	yes	true	<p>Flag indicating (to the IdP) whether Product 360 Supplier Portal requires signed assertions.</p> <p>As signing of assertions is the recommended option, the default value is true.</p>

IdpMetadata

Required element defining all Identity Provider relevant settings.

Sub element/Attribute	Type	Required	Default	Description
metadataLocation	URL or relative path in configuration folder	yes	idp-metadata.xml	<p>Provides information about the IdP. The element value itself defines the location of the metadata file. Currently two types of locations are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • URL based (http and https), e.g. "https://idpserver/metadata/idp-metadata.xml" or "http://idpserver/metadata/idp-metadata.xml". (this is the recommended way) • If neither a URL with http or https is provided, it is assumed that the file is located relatively to the Product 360 Supplier Portal configuration folder. E.g. "idp-metadata.xml" would be valid. <div>  Please note that if an URL with https is used and "disregardSslCertificate" is set to false, you have to ensure that the certificate presented by the IdP to access the metadata is trusted by Product 360 Supplier Portal. This is done by adding the certificate to the Product 360 Supplier Portal keystore (see above how to add trusted certificates). </div>



In case the `SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml` is configured for Portal administrator SSO, the same metadata location as defined in the `SamlConfig.xml` in Product 360 Server must be used.

`disregardSslCertificate`

Boolean>false

Indicating whether the servers SSL certificate should always be accepted regardless of whether it is valid.

This flag is only relevant if the element value contains a https URL.

`forceAuthRequestsSigned`

Boolean=

You can force your Product 360 Supplier Portal to add a signature to the AuthRequest by adding the `forceAuthRequestsSigned` flag to true.



In case the `SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml` is configured for Portal administrator SSO, the same setting as defined in the `SamlConfig.xml` in Product 360 Server must be used.

Identity Provider metadata

The IdP metadata usually can be received over an URL provided by the IdP, which already contains all necessary information you need to know about your IdP. This includes certification information as well as endpoints etc.

The following URL fragments show the metadata URL patterns for the most common IdP implementations:

Microsoft AD FS

```
https://idpserver/FederationMetadata/2007-06/FederationMetadata.xml
```

Shibboleth

```
https://idpserver/idp/shibboleth
```

OpenAM

```
http://openamserver/openam/saml2/jsp/exportmetadata.jsp?entityid=entityID
```

Place your `idp-metadata.xml` into the the Product 360 Supplier Portal configuration folder or the defined location within your `SamlConfig.xml`.

In case your IdP does not provide any metadata you need to generate the `idp-metadata.xml` file, the relevant information can be generated with the help of https://www.samltool.com/idp_metadata.php.

Within the metadata file you need to provide the URL to your IdPs SingleSignOnService location which accepts POST requests. (The example URL schema matches Shibboleth IdP.)

Sample idp-metadata.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<md:EntityDescriptor xmlns:md="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:metadata"
  entityID="idpEntityID">
  <md:IDPSSODescriptor WantAuthnRequestsSigned="false"
    protocolSupportEnumeration="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:protocol">
    <md:SingleSignOnService
      Binding="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:bindings:HTTP-POST"
      Location="https://idpserver/idp/profile/SAML2/POST/SSO" />
    </md:IDPSSODescriptor>
  </md:EntityDescriptor>
```

Information security

Signing of AuthRequest (SP -> IdP)

If your IdP requires signed AuthRequest you need to enable this within Product 360 Supplier Portal. Therefor you have different options.

If your idp-metadata.xml is located in the local configuration folder of Supplier Portal, the WantAuthRequestsSigned parameter can be set to true:

Enable signing of SAML request

```
<md:IDPSSODescriptor WantAuthnRequestsSigned="true" ...>
```

If you use the URL based metadata provider for referencing the IdP metadata, you can force your Product 360 Supplier Portal to add a signature to the AuthRequest by adding the forceAuthRequestsSigned flag to true:

Force Signed Auth Requests in SamlConfig.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<samlConfig xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="SamlConfig.xsd">
  ...
  <idpMetadata>
    <metadataLocation forceAuthRequestsSigned="true">https://idpserver/metadata/idp-metadata.xml</metadataLocation>
  </idpMetadata>
  ...
</samlConfig>
```

Additionally you need to provide an X509 certificate in your keystore and refer to it over the alias and password attribute in the <signingKey> element within the spMetadata section of your SamlConfig.xml.



While the SAML metadata specification does not require the WantAuthRequestSigned parameter within the IDPSSODescriptor, some IdP Implementations might not set it explicitly, but nevertheless require a signature.

Signing of SAML Assertions (IdP -> SP)

The SAML metadata specification defines a parameter for requesting an IdP to sign the SAML Assertions. To enable Product 360 Supplier Portal to require signature validation on assertion level, you need to set the `WantAssertionsSigned` parameter in `SamlConfig.xml` (resp. `SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml`) to `true`.

Enable signing of SAML response

```
<samlConfig xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="SamlConfig.xsd">
  ...
  <spMetadata>
    ...
    <wantAssertionsSigned>true</wantAssertionsSigned>
    ...
  </spMetadata>
</samlConfig>
```

The signature of the assertion will be verified by Product 360 Supplier Portal against the public key of the X509 certificate within your `idp-metadata.xml`.

Signing public key in idp-metadata.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<md:EntityDescriptor xmlns:md="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:metadata"
  entityID="idpEntityID">
  <md:IDPSSODescriptor WantAuthnRequestsSigned="false"
    protocolSupportEnumeration="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:protocol">
    ...
    <md:KeyDescriptor use="signing">
      <ds:KeyInfo xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
        <ds:X509Data>
          <ds:X509Certificate>MIIDZzCCAk+gAwIBAgIEFuHJDDANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFADBkMQswCQYDVQQGEwJJE
          RREQMA4GA1UECBMR2VybWVuetENMAsGA1UEBxMEU3RndDERMA8GA1UEChMIV2lu
          ZG93czcxDTALBgNVBAStBFBPSU0xEjAQBGNVBAMTCWxvY2FsaG9zdDAeFw0xNTEw
          MDIxMjA2NDFaFw0xNjA5MjYxMjA2NDFaMGQxCzAJBgNVBAYTAkRFMRAdgYDVQQI
          ...
          </ds:X509Certificate>
        </ds:X509Data>
      </ds:KeyInfo>
    </md:KeyDescriptor>
    ...
  </md:IDPSSODescriptor>
</md:EntityDescriptor>
```

Encryption of SAML Assertions (IdP -> SP)



JCE issues with strong cryptographic algorithms

Due to import control restrictions of some countries, the version of the JCE policy files that are bundled in the Java Runtime Environment, or JRE(TM), 8 environment allow "strong" but limited cryptography to be used. This means, if

your IdP uses a strong cryptographic algorithm like AES-256, you will need to replace your Java Runtime's JCE policy files. Otherwise you will run into errors in SAML message decryption, saying you are using an illegal key size. See <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/jce8-download-2133166.html> for details.

If your IdP supports assertion level encryption and the encryption is active, you must provide your encryption public key X509 certificate within the metadata, that is provided to the IdP. The IdP will use this public key to encrypt the SAML assertion and only the owner of the corresponding private key can encrypt the assertion.

If Product 360 Supplier Portal receives an encrypted assertion, it will try to decrypt the assertion with the configured private key which is referenced by the `<encryptionKey>` in the `SamlConfig.xml` resp. `SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml`.

encryptionKey in SamlConfig.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<samlConfig xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="SamlConfig.xsd">
  ...
  <encryptionKey password="secret" alias="encryption"/>
  ...
</samlConfig>
```

Automatic user and supplier creation on successful authentication

When the user authentication is successful, but the authenticated user and/or supplier does not exist yet in Product 360 Supplier Portal and/or Product 360 Server, a new user and/or supplier must be created with the credential information provided by the SAML response.

Automatic user/supplier creation differs for the particular user roles in Product 360 Supplier Portal.

Portal administrator

On successful authentication, a Portal administrator will be automatically created in Product 360 Supplier Portal and Product 360 Server if not yet existent. Therefore the unique user name from the SAML assertion subject element "NameID" is used. In Product 360 Server the user will be created as external user and will be assigned to the user group in Product 360 Server, which is defined by the element `defaultUserGroup` in the Supplier Portal's `SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml` file.

The user creation also takes additional optional attributes from the Assertions in the SAML Authentication Response (see chapter "SAML attributes" for more details). The synchronization of the attributes will be done only for the creation process and they will not be updated in case if the user already exists.

Broker

Broker users are also able to logon via SAML. Precondition is an existing broker user in the Supplier Portal. New brokers have to be created manually by a Portal administrator.

Supplier user

There are two supplier creation modes "Automatic" and "Manual" creation.

In both cases the email address is mandatory. The user will be identified and created with the attribute value from the attribute "NameID", which must be a unique value to identify the user.

Automatic supplier creation

To activate the "Automatic" supplier creation you need to set the `saml.supplierCreationStrategy` to `AUTOMATIC` in your `configuration.properties` file.

```
#####
### Saml settings

# Define the strategy for creating a supplier, if SAML authentication is used.
#
# Options are AUTOMATIC, APPROVAL_WORKFLOW:
# - AUTOMATIC:      Supplier and supplier users will be created automatically.
# - APPROVAL_WORKFLOW: Supplier and supplier users will be created with the registration workflow.
saml.supplierCreationStrategy=AUTOMATIC
```

Automatic creation means, that all the relevant user and supplier information is taken from the SAML assertion's attributes. When the supplier doesn't yet exist, the first successful login will create a new supplier named after the SAML attribute "SupplierName" (see chapter "SAML Attributes") and a new user with the SUPPLIER_ADMIN role and username named after the SAML attribute "emailaddress". Subsequent user authentication with different users but same supplier name will create additional users with role SUPPLIER_USER under the same supplier. The supplier creation also includes the creation of a default catalog for this supplier. The name of the newly created catalog can be influenced by the registrationCustomization.defaultCatalogName entry in the configuration.properties file:

```
#####
### Customization Settings

# The pattern {SupplierName} is going to be replaced by the supplier's name on runtime.
registrationCustomization.defaultCatalogName={SupplierName} - default Catalog
```

Manual supplier creation (approval workflow)

To activate the "Manual" supplier creation you need to set the saml.supplierCreationStrategy to PORTAL_WORKFLOW in your configuration.properties file.

```
#####
### Saml settings

# Define the strategy for creating a supplier, if SAML authentication is used.
#
# Options are AUTOMATIC, APPROVAL_WORKFLOW:
# - AUTOMATIC:      Supplier and supplier users will be created automatically.
# - APPROVAL_WORKFLOW: Supplier and supplier users will be created with the registration workflow.
saml.supplierCreationStrategy=APPROVAL_WORKFLOW
```

Manual creation means, while authentication needs to create an new supplier which does not exists yet, we will kick of an asynchronous approval workflow, which notifies an portal administrator to handle this registration manually and approve the present supplier (assign an appropriate supplier and catalog). The workflow will also take the SAML attributes like "SupplierName", "NameID", etc. into account to create and assign the appropriate supplier and user. The first user of a supplier will be assigned to the SUPPLIER_ADMIN role, while subsequent users of the same supplier will be assigned to the role SUPPLIER_USER.

SAML attributes

The user and supplier creation takes the following information from the assertions in the SAML authentication response.

Given name

Value of element attribute "name" in SAML Attribute

<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/givenname>

Mapped to User data	First name
Mandatory	No
Comment	An attribute may contain a list of values. All first name values are concatenated with a space as separator. E.g. the first name values {"John", "Karl"} will be mapped to "John Karl".

Last name

Value of element attribute "name" in SAML attribute	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/surname
Mapped to user data	Last name
Mandatory	No
Comment	An attribute may contain a list of values. All last name values are concatenated with a space as separator. E.g. the last name values {"Earl", "Doe"} will be mapped to "Earl Doe".

E-mail

Value of element attribute "name" in SAML attribute	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/emailaddress
Mapped to user data	E-mail
Mandatory	No for Portal Admin Users Yes for Supplier Users
Comment	An attribute may contain a list of values. Only the first value will be considered. E.g. the e-mail values {"john@company.com", "jdoe@company.com"} are mapped to "john@company.com". ⚠ Note that the value must be conform to the format of a valid e-mail address. If not, the synchronisation of the user fails and the single sign on process fails as well.

Supplier name

Value of element attribute "name" in SAML attribute	http://informatica.com/custom/claims/supplierName
Mapped to user data	Supplier name

Mandatory	<p>No for Portal Admin Users</p> <p>Yes for Supplier Users, if the user</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • is unknown to the system and has to be created or • has been found and is not a broker user
Comment	<p>An attribute may contain a list of values. Only the first value will be considered.</p> <p>In case the supplier is newly created, then the supplier name will also be used as supplier identifier.</p> <p>On successive SSO login processes, in case the supplier user from the SAML response is found and the supplier name is different than that user's supplier name, then the name of the supplier will be updated with the new value. That supplier's identifier will remain unchanged and will still contain the initial name from supplier creation.</p>

8.6.4 Product 360 Supplier Portal Tomcat load balancing

For the usage of SAML in combination with a load balancer in a multi-server setup, there are some additional settings that have to be made on the load balancer and SAML configuration.

Supplier Portal configuration



In the load balancing scenario you need to use the same **Encryption** and **Signing** certificates for all your cluster instances, as well as the same **entityId** in each SamlConfig.xml resp. SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml.

Your IdP will only see the load balancer as a communication peer - the Supplier Portal cluster instances behind it are hidden from the IdP.

All your Supplier Portal cluster instances need to act as one host for the IdP, so they all need to return the same assertionConsumerServiceLocation which redirects to the load balancer.

Modify all your Supplier Portal cluster instances SAMLConfig.xml resp. SamlConfigPortalAdmin.xml, when using an HTTP-based metadata provider:

- Redirect to the load balancer:

```
<assertionConsumerServiceLocation>https://loadbalancerhost/hsx</assertionConsumerServiceLocation>
```

- Use the same entityId and same signing and encryption keys:

```
<signingKey password="heiler" alias="signing" />
<encryptionKey password="heiler" alias="encryption" />
<entityId>supplierPortalEntityID</entityId>
```

Use the same keystore (signing, encryption keys) for all your Supplier Portal cluster instances.

Enable the additional spring profile named "loadBalancer", which tells the Supplier Portal to rewrite request url form IdP with the load balancer URL.

Windows

1. Call the configure script:

```
<SUPPLIER PORTAL INSTALLATION ROOT>/configure.bat
```

2. Add additionally to the samlSSO the loadBalancer profile to spring.profiles.active argument:

```
-Dspring.profiles.active=samlSSO,loadBalancer
```

Linux

1. Edit your tomcat.sh shell script:

```
<SUPPLIER PORTAL INSTALLATION ROOT>/tomcat/bin/tomcat.sh
```

2. Add additionally to the samlSSO the loadbalancer profile to spring.profiles.active argument (see line 11 below as an example):

```
....
export CATALINA_OPTS="-Dcatalina.home=$CATALINA_HOME
-Dcatalina.base=$CATALINA_HOME
-Djava.endorsed.dirs=$CATALINA_HOME/endorsed
-Djava.io.tmpdir=$CATALINA_HOME/temp
-Djava.util.logging.manager=org.apache.juli.ClassLoaderLogManager
-Djava.util.logging.config.file=$CATALINA_HOME/conf/logging.properties
-Dhsx.configurationArea=$HSX_CONFIG_AREA
-Dlogback.configurationFile=$HSX_CONFIG_AREA/logback.xml

-Dspring.profiles.active=samlSSO,loadBalancer

-XX:MaxPermSize=512m"
.....
```

Edit your configuration.properties to modify your load balancer settings within in the Loadbalancer settings section.

```
#####
### Loadbalancer settings
# Overrides request attributes with values of the load-balancer or reverse-proxy in front of the local application
# The settings help to provide correct redirect URLs and verify destination URLs during SAML processing. To activate the
SAML loadbalancer
# scenario you additionally need to add the 'loadBalancer' profile to the active spring profiles as an JVM argument.

# override the request schema to http or https
loadbalancer.schema = https
# Context path must be set and start with a forward slash
loadbalancer.contextPath = /hsx
# override your server name
loadbalancer.serverName = localhost
# override the server port
loadbalancer.port = 443
```

IdP configuration

On IdP side, it is necessary to have the load balancer set as assertion consumer service for the Supplier Portal relying party. The assertion consumer service location URL is then the same as already adjusted in the `assertionConsumerServiceLocation` in the `SamlConfig.xml`. (see above).

When you are not using the URL-based metadata fetching mechanism on IdP side, you need to manually modify the assertion consumer service location to point to the load balancer location.

Load balancer configuration

The following steps need to be done **either** for Apache **or** IIS to handle load-balancing for the Supplier Portal.

Apache and Tomcat load balancing

Additionally to the default load balancing scenario for the Supplier Portal

- Apache and Tomcat load balancing without SAML (see [Supplier Portal Load Balancer Setup](#))

you need to do the following steps to handle SAML Authentication over your Apache load balancer (Tested with Apache httpd 2.4.18):

1. Edit the Apache configuration file `httpd.conf`: Activate the SSL module additionally to the other modules. (For the usage of SSL (https) in your load balancer (Apache), stick to the official Apache documentation)

```
LoadModule ssl_module modules/mod_ssl.so

LoadModule proxy_connect_module modules/mod_proxy_connect.so
LoadModule proxy_http_module modules/mod_proxy_http.so
LoadModule proxy_module modules/mod_proxy.so
LoadModule slotmem_shm_module modules/mod_slotmem_shm.so
LoadModule lbmethod_byrequests_module modules/mod_lbmethod_byrequests.so
LoadModule proxy_balancer_module modules/mod_proxy_balancer.so
...
<IfModule ssl_module>
    Include conf/extra/httpd-ssl.conf

    SSLRandomSeed startup builtin
    SSLRandomSeed connect builtin
</IfModule>
...
```

2. Check that the `Listen` statement listens to the appropriate SSL port (default 443):

```
Listen 443
```

3. There needs to be a virtual host matching your load balancer and the SSL port, the example below defines a virtual host supporting SSL and the additional directives necessary for SAML support:

Example virtual host configuration

```
<VirtualHost *:443>
    ServerName loadBalancer
    SSLEngine on
    SSLCertificateFile "D:/certs/cert.pem"
    SSLCertificateKeyFile "D:/certs/pk.pem"
    SSLProxyEngine On
```

```
ProxyPreserveHost On

#optional for disabling certificate validation for testing purpose
#SSLProxyVerify off
#SSLProxyCheckPeerCN off
#SSLProxyCheckPeerName off

<Proxy balancer://supplierclusterSSL>
  BalancerMember https://supplierPortalCluster1:9443 route=server1
  BalancerMember https://supplierPortalCluster2:9443 route=server2
  ProxySet stickysession=JSESSIONID|jsessionid
</Proxy>

ProxyPass /hsx balancer://supplierclusterSSL/hsx stickysession=JSESSIONID|jsessionid
ProxyPassReverse /hsx balancer://supplierclusterSSL/hsx stickysession=JSESSIONID|jsessionid

</VirtualHost>
```

The most important additional directives to be configured are listed below:

Directive	Explanation
SSLProxyEngine On	Support SSL proxy
ProxyPreserveHost On	Preserve host name on proxy requests (required for successful validation of SAML requests/responses)
SSLCertificate...	Either SSL Certificate or SSLCACertificates which where defined here, need to be trusted by the IDP to successfull handle an SAML authentication.

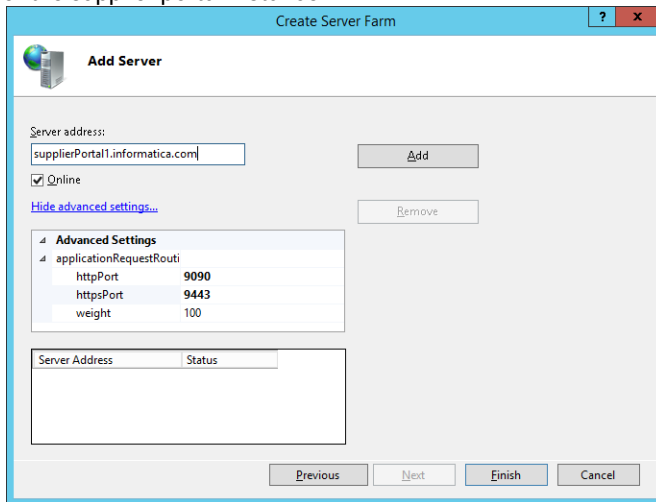
Microsoft IIS and Tomcat load balancing

You need to do the following steps to handle SAML Authentication over your IIS load balancer (tested with IIS and ARR on windows 2012 R2 server).

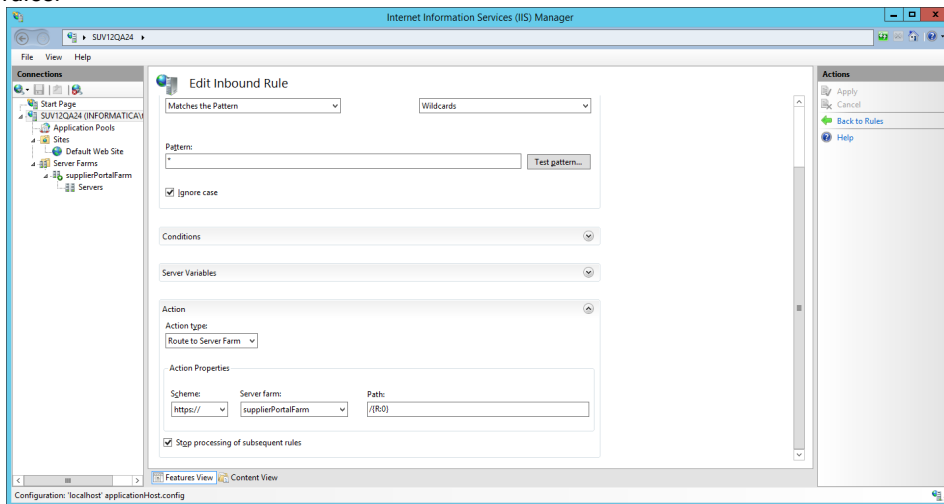
Additionally to the default IIS load balancing settings you need to take care of the following settings for the Supplier Portal:

- 1. Install Application Request Routing and URL Rewriting on your IIS server.
- 2. Create server farm with the appropriate Supplier Portal server instances (especially with their appropriate port settings, which are configured in your supplier portal configuration.properties file). Add HTTP and HTTPS ports

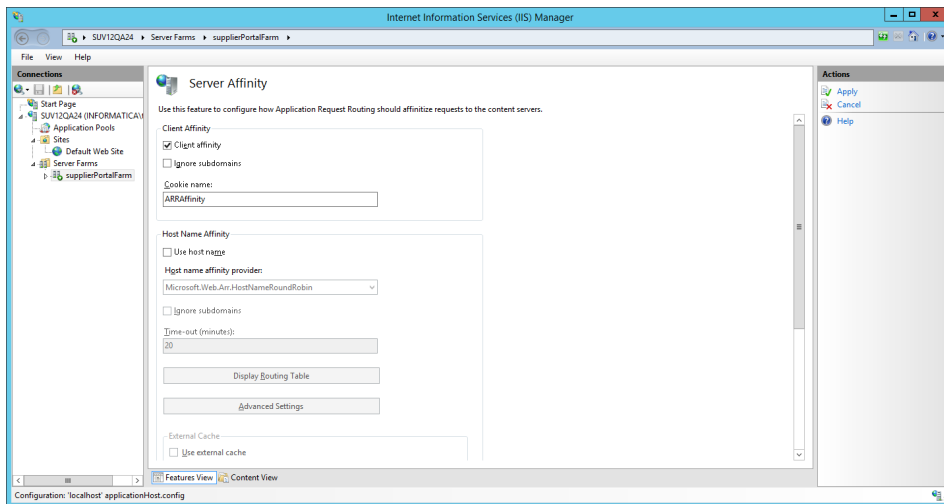
of the supplier portal instance:



3. Confirm the automatic creation of URL rewrite rules or create them yourself in case you need any special rewrite rules:



4. **IMPORTANT:** Activate Client Affinity on the Server Affinity Settings. This will map an client to an supplier portal instance, which will be needed for session stickiness:



8.6.5 Session lifetimes

There are a several token or session lifetimes that have to be considered when setting up SSO for Supplier Portal. There is no specific recommendation for the IdP side session lifetimes, but for the Product 360 applications the following requirements must be met:

PIM Server Access Token Lifetime > PIM Server Session Lifetime > PIM Supplier Portal Session Lifetime

A preconfigured Product 360 installation package already has the required default values, so typically nothing has to be done. But keep this requirement in mind in case it is desired to change any of the lifetimes.

Token name	Default value	Configurable	Description
PIM Server Access Token	One day (86400 seconds)	via preference in plugin_customization.ini: com.heiler.ppm.webservice.server/ accessTokenExpirationTime.SAML	Access Token created to make Service API calls on behalf of the Portal Admin user.
PIM Server Session	3 hours	No	Used when issuing a Rest Service API call with certain credentials.
PIM Supplier Portal Session	120 minutes	in web.xml: <session-config> <session-timeout>120</session-timeout> ... </session-config>	Login token for the Supplier Portal application.

8.7 How to configure Oracle TCPS connection for P360 Supplier Portal

8.7.1 Prerequisite

In order to establish a TCPS connection, ensure, that the Oracle server's public key certificate is known by the P360 Supplier Portal's Java Runtime Environment (JRE). There are different possibilities to achieve this. Please refer to the JSSE Reference

Guide (<https://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/technotes/guides/security/jsse/JSSERefGuide.html>) and here especially the chapters "Creating an X509TrustManager" and "Creating a Keystore to Use with JSSE".

8.7.2 Configure P360 Supplier Portal

Ensure to do the following configuration changes on all P360 Supplier Portal servers. The P360 Supplier Portal needs to be restarted in order to have changes take effect.

- in **<INSTALLATION_ROOT>/configuration/configuration.properties:**
 - specify the Oracle Server's TCPS port as value of the property **database.port** (and naturally also the other database parameters like host, database,...). For details, please refer to the chapter "[Supplier Portal Configuration](#)".
 - change the protocol to "tcps" in the property **database.url.oracle** so the value is like follows: **jdbc:oracle:thin:@(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcps)(HOST=\${database.server})(PORT=\${database.port}))(CONNECT_DATA=(SERVICE_NAME=\${database.name})))**

9 Audit Trail Configuration

In this manual configuration settings for Product 360 - Audit Trail are described.

9.1 Configuration Setup and General Description

Configuration properties which belongs to the Product 360 - Audit Trail can be found in the Product 360 - Audit Trail Server, Product 360 Core or in the MessageQueue.

The according application has to be restarted in order to have changes take effect.

The configuration file itself contains properties following the standard "key: value" pattern.



If you want to encrypt the passwords used in the configuration files please refer to chapter [Encryption of secure information in the Server Installation manual](#).


9.2 Audit Trail network config

The AuditTrailNetworkConfig.xml file holds all the information of the audit trail network.

Only the first node is used to connect to that specific Audit Trail server.

Typically the host of the node is the loadbalancer used for Audit Trail in a setup with multiple Audit Trail servers.

```
<network>
  <node host="audittrail-loadbalancer" port="2801" username="Administrator" password="Administrator" />
</network>
```


Element/ Attribute	Description	Required	Def ault
network	Root element of the network configuration	yes	
network/ node	Represents an Audit Trail server node in the cluster. Only the first node is used to connect to that specific Audit Trail server. Typically the host of the node is the loadbalancer used for Audit Trail in a setup with multiple Audit Trail servers.	yes	
host	The host name / IP address this node runs on. Note: Do not use localhost or similar addresses. The host name or IP address in this attribute must be visible from all nodes in the cluster. In case the server has the CLIENTS_SERVER role, it also must be visible from the desktop clients.	yes	
port	The port that is used for the http connection to the server. In case https is desired the port of the https element is used (see below).	yes in case http is used no in case https is used	
username	Username used for Basic Authentication.	yes	
password	Password used for Basic Authentication.	yes	
network/ node/ https	Defines whether https should be used for connection. https is automatically used if element exists. <div>  Note that if https is used, a keystore is needed. The definition for the keystore is taken from the node of the current P360 server. See keystore element definition in Server Configuration - Network Configuration (NetworkConfig.xml) section. </div>	No. Only required if https is the desired protocol.	
port	The port that is used for https connection.	yes	
protocol	Https protocol to be used for secure connection. Possible values are "SSL", "SSLv2", "SSLv3", "TLS", "TLSv1", "TLSv1.1" or "TLSv1.2".	no	TLS v1. 2



Property Description of Product 360 - Audit Trail storage server


The following tables contain a complete list of all properties available in Product 360 - Audit Trail server, grouped by functionality. Each property is described with further explanation and examples.







If you want to connect P360 Audit Trail to an Oracle Database via TCPS, please refer to chapter "[How to configure Oracle TCPS connection for P360 Audit Trail](#)".

General settings	
dest.host	Hostname on which Product 360 - Audit Trail Server is running
Database settings	
db.integrated.security	If your security guidelines do not allow passwords in configuration files this preference allows you to use integrated authentication on Windows operating systems. "Integrated Security" is a security functionality of Microsoft SQL Server. If other password protection mechanism is used, then keep this setting in the configuration file and set to false.
db.default.type	ORA11g or MSSQL2008
db.audittrail.schema	Schema name of the database. It must be in capital letters. Default: HPM_AUDITTRAIL
db.audittrail.schema.backup	Backup name of the database
db.audittrail.server	The host name of the Oracle/Microsoft SQL Server; Change this in case of a separate database server
db.audittrail.port	Port number of the database server. Default for MSSQL: 1433 Default for Oracle: 1521
db.audittrail.user	Name of the database user. For Oracle use the defined schema name. If Microsoft SQL Server "Integrated Security" is in use, set to empty
db.audittrail.password	Password for the database user If Microsoft SQL Server "Integrated Security" is in use, set to empty
db.audittrail.dir.local	Base folder for the database schema and database transaction log files, used by the database setup too. <div> This folder needs not to be local to the application server but to the database server.</div>
db.audittrail.dir.data	Folder for the database schema files .
db.audittrail.dir.log	Folder for the transaction log files.
db.audittrail.dir.temp	Folder for the database transaction log files.

General settings	
db.audittrail.data.size	Default size in MB allocated for a database transaction log file; adapt this setting to your needs. Default: 256
db.audittrail.data.size.growth	Default increment value in MB allocated when space a transaction log file is insufficient; adapt this setting to your needs. Default: 128 <div>  In a productive environment you should define the initial size of the database log files to the expected maximum. A data base growth action always "stops the world" of the database until the files are enlarged. In case the growth size is too small, this might occur very often which is a serious performance problem! </div>
db.audittrail.log.size	Default size in MB allocated for a database transaction log file; adapt this setting to your needs.
db.audittrail.log.size.growth	Default increment value in MB allocated when space for a database transaction log file is insufficient; adapt this setting to your needs. <div>  In a productive environment you should define the initial size of the database log files to the expected maximum. A data base growth action always "stops the world" of the database until the files are enlarged. In case the growth size is too small, this might occur very often which is a serious performance problem! </div>
db.audittrail.debug.show_sql	Usually, this property needs not to be changed. Generated SQL statements during runtime will be shown in the log file. This is a debugging feature which will slow down the application drastically if turned on.
Database settings (Oracle only)	
db.sys.password	Password for SYS user which will be used to connect to Oracle Server as SYSDBA Required to create/drop target schema only.
db.audittrail.tns	The TNS name used by Oracle. Please verify that TNS is enabled at Oracle Database.
db.audittrail.index.size	Default size in MB allocated for an index tablespace; adapt this setting to your needs.
db.audittrail.index.size.growth	Default increment value in MB allocated when space for an index tablespace is insufficient; adapt this setting to your needs.
db.audittrail.temp.size	Default size in MB allocated for a database transaction log file; adapt this setting to your needs.


General settings	
db.audittrail.temp.size.growth	<p>Default increment value in MB allocated when space a transaction log file is insufficient; adapt this setting to your needs.</p> <div>  In a productive environment you should define the initial size of the database log files to the expected maximum. A data base growth action always "stops the world" of the database until the files are enlarged. In case the growth size is too small, this might occur very often which is a serious performance problem! </div>
Persistence layer settings	
hibernate.dialect	<p>Default for MSSQL: org.hibernate.dialect.SQLServer2008Dialect Default for Oracle: org.hibernate.dialect.Oracle10gDialect</p>
hibernate.connection.driver_class	<p>Default for MSSQL: com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerDriver Default for Oracle: oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver</p>
hibernate.connection.url	<p>Default for MSSQL: dbc:sqlserver://\${db.audittrail.server}:\${db.audittrail.port};databaseName=\${db.audittrail.schema} Default for Oracle: jdbc:oracle:thin:@\${db.audittrail.server}:\${db.audittrail.port}/\${db.audittrail.tns}</p>
hibernate.connection.username	<p>Default: \${db.audittrail.user}</p>
hibernate.connection.password	<p>Default: \${db.audittrail.password}</p>
hibernate.entitychange.id.allocate	<p>Default: 2000</p>
hibernate.transaction.jdbc.pool.validationQuery	<p>Default for MSSQL: SELECT 1 Default for Oracle: SELECT 1 FROM DUAL</p>
hibernate.transaction.jdbc.interceptors	<p>Default for MSSQL: StatementCache(prepared=true,max=100) Default for Oracle: StatementFinalizer</p>
Communication settings	


General settings	
server.authentication.enabled	Turn authentication on/off Default: true
JMS consumer settings	
jms.connection.url	<p>Connection URL of the JMS server tcp://<host>:<port>. Default: tcp://localhost:61616</p> <div>  The URL have to match the MessageQueue configuration and JMS configuration in audittrail.properties of Product 360 Core. </div>
jms.connection.username	<p>In case MessageQueue security is activated this is the defined user name. Default: atcsreader</p> <div>  It has to match the MessageQueue activemq.xml authenticationUser. </div>
jms.connection.password	<p>In case MessageQueue security is activated, this is the defined password for the user. Default: arpass</p> <div>  It has to match the MessageQueue activemq.xml authenticationUser. </div>
jms.queue.name	<p>JMS subscription queue name. The consumer is using VirtualTopic Queue, so queue name should match Consumer.*.VirtualTopic.* pattern. Default: Consumer.ATCS.VirtualTopic.ATCS.ALL</p> <div>  The corresponding topic configuration in the server.properties of Audit Trail server have to be named "VirtualTopic.<restof the topic name>" </div>
jms.consumer.count	<p>JMS consumers count. Notice that every consumer work in separate session and receives messages asynchronously. Default: 20</p>
jms.consumer.validator.errors.limit	<p>Errors count, which should be reached, to suspend JMS consumption and wait for a while before reconnect again (see delay property) Default: 20</p>

General settings	
<code>jms.consumer.validator.trigger.seconds</code>	Delay between JMS error validations in seconds. Default: 10
<code>jms.consumer.validator.restart.delay.seconds</code>	Delay between JMS service restart. Default: 60
<code>jms.consumer.autostart</code>	JMS consumer service auto start option. If multiple Audit Trail servers are running and you want to use one server for answering requests and the other for working the message queue, you have to set this value to false for the server which should handle only requests. Default: true
<code>jms.consumer.jmxregistration</code>	JMS management bean registration option Default: true

9.3 Property Description of Product 360 - Audit Trail in Product 360 Core

The following tables contain a complete list of all Product 360 - Audit Trail properties available in Product 360 Core, grouped by functionality. Each property is described with further explanation and examples.

General settings	
<code>audittrail.enabled</code>	Enable/Disable Product 360 - Audit Trail functionality. If Product 360 - Audit Trail is disabled there will be no performance overhead. Default = false
<code>audittrail.fetch.data.before.delete</code>	Should be true if hard deletes should be logged with identifiers and labels. Disabling this feature will improve performance but only entity type will be logged for hard delete operations. Default = true
<code>audittrail.atcsbuilder.local</code>	Locale for object labels and entity names (Product 360 - Audit Trail saves object labels only in one language). If not defined then Product 360 Server locale is used. Default: en_US
JMS settings	
<code>audittrail.jmsconsumer.jms.topic</code>	JMS topic where Audit Trail Change Sets will be sent to. The topic name should start with "VirtualTopic" prefix because ActiveMQ maps such topics to queues internally by a convention. Default: <code>VirtualTopic.ATCS.ALL</code> <div>  Corresponding queues have to be named "Consumer.*.VirtualTopic.<rest of the topic name>" </div>

General settings	
audittrail.jmsconsumer.jms.connection.url	<p>JMS connection URL <code>tcp://<host>:<port></code>. Default: <code>tcp://localhost:61616</code></p> <div>  The URL have to fit the MessageQueue configuration and has to match JMS configuration in server.properties of Product 360 - Audit Trail server. </div>
audittrail.jmsconsumer.storage.type	<p>When JMS is not accessible messages are persisted, storage types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • file - each message is serialized to file - recommended • discard - messages discarded • jdbm - storage based on JDBM • memory - stores messages in memory <p>Saved messages are sent to JMS as soon as JMS server become accessible Default: <code>file</code></p>
audittrail.jmsconsumer.storage.warn	<p>Works only if storage type is <i>discard</i>. If true each discarded message will add warning in log. Default: <code>false</code></p>
audittrail.jmsconsumer.storage.size	<p>Works only if storage type is <i>memory</i>. Defines max number of messages in the storage. Default: <code>100000</code></p>
audittrail.jmsconsumer.jms.sessions	<p>Number of JMS sessions used to send ATCSs Default: <code>10</code></p>
audittrail.jmsconsumer.jms.persisted	<p>If messages are not persisted then they will be lost if JMS server crashes or is restarted but JMS server can become a performance bottle neck if messages are persisted (SSD or raid can help) Default: <code>false</code></p>
ATCS Builder thread poll configuration	<p>ATCSs are constructed asynchronously. This section of config allows to tune thread pool running ATCS builder threads.</p>
audittrail.processor.async.threadpools.size	<p>ATCS builder thread pool's size. Default: <code>30</code></p>
audittrail.processor.async.KeepAliveTime.msecs	<p>ATCS builder thread pool's keep alive which is the amount of time that threads in excess of the core pool size may remain idle before being terminated. Default: <code>600</code></p>

9.4 How to configure Oracle TCPS connection for P360 Audit Trail

9.4.1 Prerequisite

In order to establish a TCPS connection, ensure, that the Oracle server's public key certificate is known by the P360 Audit Trail's Java Runtime Environment (JRE). There are different possibilities to achieve this. Please refer to the JSSE Reference Guide (<https://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/technotes/guides/security/jsse/JSSERefGuide.html>) and here especially the chapters "Creating an X509TrustManager" and "Creating a Keystore to Use with JSSE".

9.4.2 Configure P360 Audit Trail

Ensure to do the following configuration changes on all P360 Audit Trail servers. The P360 Audit Trails servers need to be restarted in order to have changes take effect.

- in `<INSTALLATION_ROOT>/atserver/configuration/audittrailserver/server.properties`:
 - specify the Oracle Server's TCPS port as value of the property `db.audittrail.port` (and naturally also the other database parameters like host name, schema,...). For details, please refer to the chapter "[Audit Trail Configuration](#)".
 - change the protocol to "tcps" in the property `"hibernate.connection.url"` so it is equals `jdbc:oracle:thin:@(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcps)(HOST=${db.audittrail.server})(PORT=${db.audittrail.port}))(CONNECT_DATA=(SERVICE_NAME=${db.audittrail.tns})))`



An Oracle TCPS connection is only supported for the Audit Trail server itself. The Audit Trail Database installation and update (described in the chapter "Audit Trail Database" in the "Database Installation" manual) is NOT possible via TCPS for Oracle.

10 Web Search Configuration

Each Web Search is based on an index, which has to be built previously. The content of the search index can be configured in the index configuration which is located in `<P360_WEBSEARCH_INSTALLATION_ROOT>\store\index.xml`.

You can also use the web-based, rudimentary Configuration Administration Tool which is located on: `http://server:port/hps-config-admin` (please consider to replace your own server and port settings, e.g. `http://localhost:18090/hps-config-admin/`).

- [Configuration Troubleshooting](#)
- Web-based Index Config Administration Tool

All index configurations can be read by REST as well: `http://server:port/hps-web/rest2/index/<Name of index>/Configuration/Online` (e.g. `http://localhost:18090/hps-web/rest2/index/Master/Configuration/Online`, where '**Master**' is the index name).

The data source of the indices is the Product 360 Service API. Therefore the Web Search depends on what the Product 360 Service API provides.



Tip

If you have any further question, how to configure Web Search, have a look to the [HowTo page: Web Search Configuration](#) How to

10.1 Index Configuration

10.1.1 Locale

Locale defines the locale and language specific setting of this index. This is also important to use language specific stop words and stemmers for the index build.

key	description	example
locale	Locale value for index configuration in JAVA syntax.	de_DE en_US

10.1.2 Data Provider



Data Provider settings are not be set in each index configuration anymore. Such setting are configured in *configuration.properties* file since version 8.0.6: Setup WebSearch Configuration

10.1.3 Catalogs and Assortments

The Web Search index is based on a catalog or an assortment of a catalog. If nothing has been defined, the Master Catalog will be used.

key	description	example
catalogs	Identifier or internal id of a catalog. It is possible to define more than one catalog by using a comma as separator.	Electronic Equipment 1001
assortments	<p>Internal id of an assortment.</p> <p>The name of an assortment is not unique and a assortment identifier does not exist for assortments.</p> <p>The id of an assortment can be find out using the REST request (including the blanks at the equal sign):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • P360 <= 7.0.05: <code>http://<host>:1512/rest/V1.0/list/ArticleAssortment/bySearch?query=ArticleAssortment.ItemParentProxy = "Assortmentname"</code> • P360 > 7.0.05: <code>http://<host>:1512/rest/V1.0/list/ArticleAssortment/bySearch?query=ArticleAssortment.Name = "Assortmentname"</code> <p>For product assortment please request:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • P360 <= 7.0.05: <code>http://<host>:1512/rest/V1.0/list/Product2GAssortment/bySearch?query=Product2GAssortment.ItemParentProxy = "Assortmentname"</code> • P360 > 7.0.05: <code>http://<host>:1512/rest/V1.0/list/Product2GAssortment/bySearch?query=Product2GAssortment.Name = "Assortmentname"</code> <p>Please ensure blanks between the equals sign.</p>	110,116

10.1.4 Entity

Each Web Search index has to be defined an entity which is an *ArticleType*-based Product 360 Repository entity like *Article*, *Variant* or *Product2G*. One entity or multiple entities can be specified.

key	description	example
entity. [entityname].pageable	Defines that the search is pageable.	entity.Article.pageable=true

key	description	example
<code>entity.[entityname].parent</code>	Set the parent entity of this entity.	For 2-level product paradigm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>entity.Article.parent=Product2G</code> For 3-level product paradigm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>entity.Article.parent=Variant</code> • <code>entity.Variant.parent=Product2G</code>
<code>entity.[entityname].subentities</code>	Define subentities of this entity. This is important for the field configuration.	<code>entity.Article.subentities=ArticleLang,ArticleSales</code>



Please keep in mind, that defining only one entity or omitting the `entity.[entityname].parent` key leads to disable the drill-down functionality in Product 360 Web Search.

10.1.5 Field

All fields have to be defined for the Web Search index. Please note the special syntax of the key field, where the last fragment corresponds to the Solr schema field attribute.

Field definitions correspond to the Product 360 Server field definitions in the repository.

References:

`entityname`: *ArticleType*-based Product 360 Repository entity identifiers like *Article*, *Variant* or *Product2G*

`subentityname`: e.g. *ArticleLang*, *ArticleSales*, *Product2GLang*

`fieldname`: Product 360 Repository fields like e.g. *Id*, *CurrentStatus*, *DescriptionShort*, *DescriptionLong*, *Amount*

`field attributes`: Solr Field Attributes like *searchable*, *sortable*, *filterable*, *stored*, *facettable*, *type*. For further descriptions see below in the next table.

key	description	example
<code>field.[entityname](.[subentityname]).[fieldname].[field attributes]</code>	Index search includes	
<code>field.Product2G.Id.[field attributes]</code>	Product id	<code>field.Product2G.Id.type=referencenumber</code>
<code>field.Product2G.ProductNo.[field attributes]</code>	Product number	<code>field.Product2G.ProductNo.type=string</code>
<code>field.Product2G.CurrentStatus.[field attributes]</code>	Product current status	<code>field.Product2G.CurrentStatus.type=infotext</code>
<code>field.Product2G.ManufacturerAID.[field attributes]</code>	Product manufacturer id	<code>field.Product2G.ManufacturerAID.type=reference number</code>

field.Product2G.ManufacturerName.[field attributes]	Product manufacturer name	field.Product2G.ManufacturerName.type=infotext
field.Product2G.Product2GLang.DescriptionShort.[field attributes]	Product short description	field.Product2G.Product2GLang.DescriptionShort.type=descriptionshort field.Product2G.Product2GLang.DescriptionShort.sourcefield=Product2GLang.DescriptionShort(de) Qualifier (Logical Keys) is: language, e.g. <i>en, eng, de, deu, es, pt</i>
field.Product2G.Product2GLang.DescriptionLong.[field attributes]	Product long description	field.Product2G.Product2GLang.DescriptionLong.type=descriptionlong field.Product2G.Product2GLang.DescriptionLong.sourcefield=Product2GLang.DescriptionLong(de) Qualifier (Logical Keys) is: language, e.g. <i>en, eng, de, deu, es, pt</i>
field.Product2G.Product2GPriceValueSales.Amount.[field attributes]	Product sales price This key has some parameter which can be define with the solr scheme field: sourcefield	field.Product2G.Product2GPriceValueSales.Amount.type=decimal field.Product2G.Product2GPriceValueSales.Amount.sourcefield= Product2GPriceValueSales.Amount('Public',net_customer,EUR,DE,2013-03-27,1.0) Qualifier (Logical Keys) are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Customer • Price type • Currency • Valid in region • Time of validity • Lower price tier
field.Product2G.Product2GLog.ModificationDate.[field attributes]	Product modification date	field.Product2G.Product2GLog.ModificationDate.type=string
field.Article.SupplierAID.[field attributes]	Article id	field.Article.SupplierAID.type= referencenumber
field.Article.EAN.[field attributes]	Article EAN	field.Article.EAN.type=referencenumber
field.Article.CurrentStatus.[field attributes]	Article current status	field.Article.CurrentStatus.type=infotext
field.Article.DeliveryTime.[field attributes]	Article delivery time	field.Article.DeliveryTime.type=decimal

<code>field.Article.ManufacturerName.[field attributes]</code>	Article manufacturer name	<code>field.Article.ManufacturerName.type=infotext</code>
<code>field.Article.ArticleLang.DescriptionShort.[field attributes]</code>	Article short description	<code>field.Article.ArticleLang.DescriptionShort.type=descriptionshort</code> <code>field.Article.ArticleLang.DescriptionShort.sourcefield=ArticleLang.DescriptionShort(de)</code> Qualifier (Logical Keys) is: language, e.g. <i>en, eng, de, deu, es, pt</i>
<code>field.Article.ArticleLang.DescriptionLong.[field attributes]</code>	Article long description	<code>field.Article.ArticleLang.DescriptionLong.type=descriptionlong</code> <code>field.Article.ArticleLang.DescriptionLong.sourcefield=ArticleLang.DescriptionLong(de)</code> Qualifier (Logical Keys) is: language, e.g. <i>en, eng, de, deu, es, pt</i>
<code>field.Article.ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount.[field attributes]</code>	Article sales price	<code>field.Article.ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount.type=decimal</code> <code>field.Article.ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount.sourcefield=</code> <code>ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount('Public',net_customer,EUR,DE,2013-03-27,1.0)</code> Qualifier (Logical Keys) are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Customer • Price type • Currency • Valid in region • Time of validity • Lower price tier
<code>field.Article.ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount.[field attributes]</code>	Article purchase price	<code>field.Article.ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount.type=decimal</code> <code>field.Article.ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount.sourcefield=</code> <code>ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount("Heiler Product Manager",net_list,EUR,DE,2013-03-27,1.0)</code> Qualifier (Logical Keys) are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Supplier • Price type • Currency • Valid in region • Time of validity • Lower price tier

10.1.6 Solr Field Attributes for WebSearch Configuration

field attributes of Solr scheme	description	values
type	Type of field which also set default values to the other scheme fields.	referencenumber, infotext, string, descriptionshort, descriptionlong, decimal (see in table Web Search Field Types below)
searchable	If true, this field will be searchable.	true/false
sortable	If true, this field will be sortable.	true/false
filterable	If true, this field will be filterable.	true/false
stored	If true, this field will be stored. This is also necessary, if the field is sortable and searchable.	true/false
facetable	If true, this field will be facetable. The facets will be displayed on Product 360 - Web after running a search query.	true/false
facetordervalue	A number that is used for sorting facets.	number
autocompletable	If true, this field will be autocompletable (is not used in Web Search).	true/false
sourcefield	Describes the original source of the field. This has to be defined, if the field contains parameter like the locale or language.	e.g. ArticleLang.DescriptionShort(de) ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount("Heiler Product Manager",net_list,EUR,DE, 2013-03-27,1.0) ArticleLog.ModificationDate(HPM)
returnfield	Describes the original field name which are returned. This is useful, if you like to add the same field with different parameter like the language in your index.	e.g. ArticleLang.DescriptionShort(de) ArticlePriceValuePurchase.Amount("Heiler Product Manager",net_list,EUR,DE, 2013-03-27,1.0) ArticleLog.ModificationDate(HPM)
ismodificationdatesource	If true, this field will be the source of the modification date of each row.	true/false

10.1.7 Attributes

Product 360 Core Attributes can be defined for the use as facets in Web Search index.

key	description	example
<code>attributeprovider.[entityname]. [entityname]Attribute.namesourcefields</code>	Product 360 attributes namesource like attribute name and attribute unit.	<code>attributeprovider.Product2G.Product2 GAttribute.namesourcefields=</code> <code>Product2GAttributeLang.Name(en),Pr oduct2GAttribute.Unit(eng)</code> <code>attributeprovider.Article.ArticleAttribut e.namesourcefields=</code> <code>ArticleAttributeLang.Name(en),Article Attribute.Unit(eng)</code> Qualifier (Logical Keys) is: language, e.g. <i>en, eng, de, deu, es, pt</i>
<code>attributeprovider.[entityname]. [entityname]Attribute.valuesourcefield s</code>	Product 360 attribute valuesource like attribute value .	<code>attributeprovider.Product2G.Product2 GAttribute.valuesourcefields=</code> <code>Product2GAttributeValue.Value</code> <code>attributeprovider.Article.ArticleAttribut e.valuesourcefields=</code> <code>ArticleAttributeValue.Value</code>
<code>attributeprovider.search.ignoreAttri butesWithValues</code>	Attribute values that are ignored in the search. That means that the specified terms are not considered as a match for attributes values . However, if the term is contained in any other field, the row matches.	<code>attributeprovider.search.ignoreAttribut esWithValues=no,false,0</code>

10.2 Advanced Index Configuration

10.2.1 Base Solr Field Types

		Solr field attributes
type	example value	stored
string	some text	true

boolean	true	true
decimal	1.234	true
integer	45	true

10.2.2 Web Search Field Types for Web Search Configuration

Web Search Field Types are defined in the **schema.xml** file located in `solr/configuration/{locale}/conf`, with `locale = en_US` or `de_DE`. Further information can be found on the solr wiki: <http://wiki.apache.org/solr/SchemaXml>

				Solr field attributes							
type	example native fields	example value	purpose	stored	searchable	facets	sortable	filterable	auto-complete	boost factor	related analyzers
descriptionshort	• description short	black shoes	searchable, filter, sortable string field	true	true		true	true	true	medium, 5.0	simple exact short shingle phonetic ngram edgengramfront edgengramback snowball
descriptionlong	• description long	black shoes	searchable, filter, sortable string field	true	true			true		normal, 1.0	simple exact short shingle phonetic ngram edgengramfront edgengramback snowball

infotext	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> catalogname manufacturername suppliername 	some text	searchable, filter, sortable, facetable string field	true	true	true	true	true	true	normal, 2.0	simple exact
infonumber	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> lead time/delivery time price 	1.234	filterable, sortable, facetable number field using decimals	true		true	true	true			
keyword	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> keyword 	black shoes shoe		true	true					low, 0.001	simple exact
referencenumber	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> supplierarticleid manufacturerarticleid ean 	1234-456/234	searchable, filterable, sortable string field	true	true		true	true	true	high, 10.0	simple exact shingle referencenumberfront referencenumberback

10.2.3 Analyzer

Solr Analyzer contains information how to pre-process input text at index time and/or at search time. This can be done with Tokenizers and Token Filters. Please refer to <http://wiki.apache.org/solr/AnalyzersTokenizersTokenFilters> for further information.

10.2.4 Boost Factor

Boost factor can improve the score value of a result item and gives a higher ranking of in the search result. There exist a few default values for boost factor for Web Search Field Types (see also table above) and Attributes:

type / attribute	boost factor
descriptionshort	5.0
descriptionlong	1.0
infotext	2.0
keyword	0.001
referencenumber	10.0
attribute	1.0

In addition to the default boost values by fieldType, it is also possible to configure an boost value on field level. In such a case, both values will be applied together on each match. The for boosting fields is like this:

```
boost.field.Article.SupplierAID = 20
```

In this example, the item number field is boosted by factor 20 (default is 1.0).

10.2.5 Simplify Localization Parameters

For localization handling, the parameter `locale` is mandatory in each index configuration. Based on the value of that parameter, other parameters are automatically derived by the system as shown in the following table. This simplification only works for all locales.

Placeholder	locale=de_DE	locale=en_US	Example
<code>\${languageISO3}</code>	deu	eng	field.Article.ArticleLang.DescriptionLong.sourcefield=ArticleLang.DescriptionLong(<code>\${languageISO3}</code>) attributeprovider.Article.ArticleAttribute.namesourcefields=ArticleAttributeLang.Name(<code>\${languageISO3}</code>),ArticleAttribute.Unit(<code>\${languageISO3}</code>)
<code>\${language}</code>	de	en	field.Article.ArticleLang.DescriptionLong.sourcefield=ArticleLang.DescriptionLong(<code>\${language}</code>) attributeprovider.Article.ArticleAttribute.namesourcefields=ArticleAttributeLang.Name(<code>\${language}</code>),ArticleAttribute.Unit(<code>\${languageISO3}</code>)
<code>\${locale}</code>	de_DE	en_US	field.Article.ArticleLang.DescriptionShort.sourcefield=ArticleLang.DescriptionShort(<code>\${locale}</code>) attributeprovider.Article.ArticleAttribute.namesourcefields=ArticleAttributeLang.Name(<code>\${locale}</code>),ArticleAttribute.Unit
Since version 7.1.0 :			
<code>\${country}</code>	DE	US	field.Article.ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount.returnfield=ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount('Public',net_customer,USD, <code>\${country}</code>),2013-03-27,1.0)

Placeholder	locale=de_DE	locale=en_US	Example
\${countryISO3}	DEU	USA	field.Article.ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount.returnfield=ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount('Public',net_customer,USD,\${countryISO3},2013-03-27,1.0)
\${now}	<i>current time</i>	<i>current time</i>	field.Article.ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount.returnfield=ArticlePriceValueSales.Amount('Public',net_customer,USD,US,\${now},1.0)

10.2.6 Object rights

Object rights (internally named ACLs) will be automatically added to the index configuration only if entity is:

- Item
- Variant
- Product2G

These entities are based on *ArticleType*.

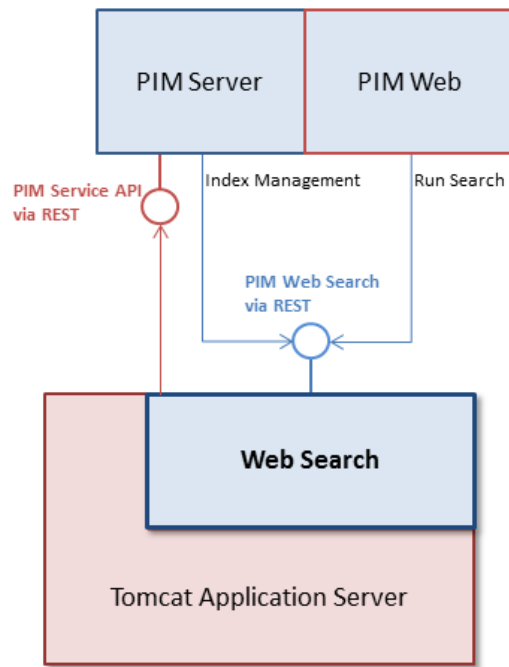
If the customer has additional *ArticleType*-based entities, the following field definitions have to be added to the index configuration:

Assume the entity identifier is: *EntityBasedOnArticleType*

```
field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.type=keyword
field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.sortable=false
field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.filterable=true
field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.searchable=true
field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.stored=true
field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.autocompletable=false
```

10.3 REST Credential Configuration for Web Search

Product 360 - Web Search will be delivered with a default credential settings ensuring all REST requests are secured. Don't confuse this with Product 360 Service API which is configured *configuration.properties* as well.



The REST credential can be configure before the installation in:

<P360_WEBSEARCH_INSTALLATION_ROOT>\configuration.properties as described in [.PIM - Web Search Configuration v8.1](#).

After the installation the REST credentials can be changed in: <P360_WEBSEARCH_INSTALLATION_ROOT>\apache-tomcat-7.0.xx\webapps\hps-web\WEB-INF\classes\META-INF\spring\fulltextsearch.properties.

Don't forget to change the Product 360 Desktop and Product 360 - Web settings as well. See Setup Configuration for Product 360 - Core and Product 360 - Web for further instructions.

10.3.1 Checklist

No	Task	location
Product 360 Web Search REST Service:		
1	Change <i>fulltextsearch.properties</i> file	<P360_WEBSEARCH_INSTALLATION_ROOT>\apache-tomcat-7.0.xx\webapps\hps-web\WEB-INF\classes\META-INF\spring
2	Change credential in Configuration Administration Tool	http://localhost:18090/hps-config-admin
Product 360 Rest Service (Product 360 Service API):		
3	Change credential in <i>fulltextsearch.properties</i> file	<P360_SERVER_INSTALLATION_ROOT>\server\configuration\HPM
5	Restart Web Search server	Window Service: Informatica Product 360 Search

**Tip**

Please check your credential using the REST Url in your browser: <http://localhost:18090/hps-web/rest2/index/Master/Configuration/Online>

10.4 REST Credential for Product 360 Service API

The REST credential can be configured before the installation in:

<P360_WEBSEARCH_INSTALLATION_ROOT>\configuration.properties as described in [.PIM - Web Search Configuration v8.1](#).

After the installation the REST credentials can be changed in: <P360_WEBSEARCH_INSTALLATION_ROOT>\apache-tomcat-7.0.xx\webapps\hps-web\WEB-INF\classes\META-INF\spring\hpm.properties.

10.5 Add further languages

Product 360 Web Search contains two languages [German](#) and [US English](#) out of the box for the index configuration.

However indices and their related searches are language dependent while considering language specific grammar-, stop-words- and phonetic-settings.

Following several steps describes how to add new language for an index configuration. Examples use France as a new language:

- Edit file *solr.xml* in folder *solr\configuration*: add a line for the new language with the core tag. Example: `<core name="fr_FR" instanceDir="fr_FR" />`
- Add a new subfolder of *solr\configuration*, e.g. *fr_FR/conf* and copy for the first the three files: *schema.xml*, *solrconfig.xml* and *stopwords.txt* from folder *en_US/conf* into the new folder.
- File *solrconfig.xml* can be left as it is.
- File *schema.xml* has to be edited:
 - Change language and country settings in JAVA syntax of **CollationKeyFilterFactory**. Example: `<filter class="solr.CollationKeyFilterFactory" language="fr" country="FR" strength="primary" />`
 - Change encoder for **PhoneticFilterFactory**. Example: `<filter class="solr.PhoneticFilterFactory" encoder="DoubleMetaphone" inject="false"/>`. For further info see API of class *PhoneticFilterFactory*: http://lucene.apache.org/solr/3_6_0/org/apache/solr/analysis/PhoneticFilterFactory.html
 - Change language of **SnowballPorterFilterFactory**. Example: `<filter class="solr.SnowballPorterFilterFactory" language="French"/>`. Further info can be found in: http://lucene.apache.org/solr/3_6_0/org/apache/solr/analysis/package-summary.html and http://lucene.apache.org/solr/3_6_0/org/apache/solr/analysis/SnowballPorterFilterFactory.html
 - Change **StemFilterFactory** in *edgengramfront* and *edgengramback* fieldType definition. Replace `<filter class="solr.EnglishMinimalStemFilterFactory"/>` with for example `<filter class="solr.FrenchMinimalStemFilterFactory"/>`. Please have a look to: http://lucene.apache.org/solr/3_6_0/org/apache/solr/analysis/BaseTokenFilterFactory.html where all available StemFilterFactory classes are listed.
- File *stopwords.txt* has to be replaced by language-specific stopword list. This can be found in package *org.apache.lucene.analysis* and language-specific subpackage. For example the stopword of French can be found in package *org.apache.lucene.analysis.snowball* or in package *org.apache.lucene.analysis.fr* in file: *french_stop.txt*.

The French example is available here: *fr_FR.zip*. But it has not been tested.

10.6 Examples

Examples for index configuration which can be used to get started can be found after installing Product 360 Web Search in folder [indexExamples](#) of your installation location.

These examples include the listed files below:

- item only: *index item-only.txt*

- product only: index product-only.txt
- variant only: index variant-only.txt
- 2-level product paradigm (with product and item): index 2pp (product,item).txt
- 3-level product paradigm (with product,variant and item): index 3pp (product,variant,item).txt
- Items of assortments: index with assortments.txt
- Items of catalogs: index with catalogs.txt

Further index configuration with some customizations:

- item assortment with two different logical key per field.txt
- items with channel logical key.txt

10.7 External links

Further information to Solr can be found here:

- <http://wiki.apache.org/solr>
- <http://wiki.apache.org/solr/AnalyzersTokenizersTokenFilters>
- <http://wiki.apache.org/solr/SchemaXml>
- <http://www.solrtutorial.com/solrconfig-xml.html>
- <http://www.solrtutorial.com/schema-xml.html>
- <http://www.installationpage.com/solr/solr-configuration-tutorial-schema-solrconfig-xml/>
- <http://www.solrtutorial.com/boost-documents-by-age.html>
- <https://cwiki.apache.org/confluence/display/solr/Major+Changes+from+Solr+3+to+Solr+4#MajorChangesfromSolr3toSolr4-Changestosolrconfig.xml>

10.8 Configuration Troubleshooting

In case the application doesn't work, you might try the following:

No search results	<p>Please check:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Index build was successful. • Product 360 Server and Product 360 Web Server is available • Product 360 - Web Search server is available • Use for the first time an asterix '*' as a search string • Check all index configuration settings in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <PIM_WEBSEARCH_INSTALLATION_ROOT>/configuration.properties • <PIM_INSTALLATION_ROOT>/webfrontend.properties • <PIM_INSTALLATION_ROOT>/fulltextsearch.properties • May be the Product 360 data has not anything which matches the search string
Drill-Down functionality does not work	<p>Please check in the index configuration:</p> <p>Define more than one entity:</p> <pre>entity.Article.pageable= true entity.Variant.pageable= true or entity.Product.pageable= true</pre> <p>Define parent key:</p> <pre>entity.Article.parent=Variant or entity.Article.parent=Product</pre>

Object rights will not be considered	<p>Object rights of Item-, Variant- and Product2G entities will be automatically added to the index configuration</p> <p>If the customer has additional ArticleType-based entities, add following field definitions to the index configuration: (e.g. entity identifier = EntityBasedOnArticleType)</p> <pre>field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.type=keyword field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.sortable=false field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.filterable=true field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.searchable=true field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.stored=true field.EntityBasedOnArticleType.AclProxy.autocompletable=false</pre>
--------------------------------------	--

11 BPM

11.1 How to configure Oracle TCPS connection for BPM

11.1.1 Prerequisite

In order to establish a TCPS connection, ensure, that the Oracle server's public key certificate is known by the P360 Audit Trail's Java Runtime Environment (JRE). There are different possibilities to achieve this. Please refer to the JSSE Reference Guide (<https://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/technotes/guides/security/jsse/JSSERefGuide.html>) and here especially the chapters "Creating an X509TrustManager" and "Creating a Keystore to Use with JSSE".

11.1.2 Configure P360 BPM

Ensure to do the following configuration changes on all P360 BPM servers. The P360 BPM servers need to be restarted in order to have changes take effect.

- in **<INSTALLATION_ROOT>/server/server-enterprise/tomcat_config/bin/install.properties**:
 - change the **jdbc.database.url** property to the following: `jdbc\:oracle\:thin\://@ (DESCRIPTION\=(ADDRESS\=(PROTOCOL\=tcps)(HOST\=<YOUR_DATABASE_HOST>)(PORT\=<DB_SSL_PORT>))(CONNECT_DATA\=(SERVICE_NAME\=<DATABASE_NAME>)))`
 - run the **config_deploy.sh** file in the same directory as follows: **sudo ./config_deploy.sh console**
 - restart the BPM service